

**GigaDevice Semiconductor Inc.**

**GD32C11x**  
**ARM<sup>®</sup> Cortex<sup>®</sup>-M4 32-bit MCU**

**Firmware Library**  
**User Guide**

Revision 1.2

(Dec. 2023)

# Table of Contents

<b>Table of Contents .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>1. Introduction .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>1.1. Rules of User Manual and Firmware Library .....</b>	<b>21</b>
1.1.1. Peripherals.....	21
1.1.2. Naming rules.....	22
<b>2. Firmware Library Overview .....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>2.1. File Structure of Firmware Library .....</b>	<b>23</b>
2.1.1. Examples Folder .....	24
2.1.2. Firmware Folder.....	24
2.1.3. Template Folder .....	24
2.1.4. Utilities Folder .....	27
<b>2.2. File descriptions of Firmware Library .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>3. Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals .....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>3.1. Overview of Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals.....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>3.2. ADC .....</b>	<b>29</b>
3.2.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	29
3.2.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	30
<b>3.3. BKP.....</b>	<b>57</b>
3.3.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	58
3.3.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	58
<b>3.4. CAN .....</b>	<b>69</b>
3.4.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	69
3.4.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	70
<b>3.5. CRC .....</b>	<b>99</b>
3.5.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	99
3.5.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	99
<b>3.6. CTC.....</b>	<b>103</b>
3.6.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	103
3.6.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	104
<b>3.7. DAC .....</b>	<b>116</b>
3.7.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	116
3.7.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	117

<b>3.8. DBG .....</b>	<b>131</b>
3.8.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	131
3.8.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	131
<b>3.9. DMA .....</b>	<b>136</b>
3.9.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	136
3.9.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	137
<b>3.10. EXMC .....</b>	<b>156</b>
3.10.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	156
3.10.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	157
<b>3.11. EXTI .....</b>	<b>162</b>
3.11.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	162
3.11.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	162
<b>3.12. FMC .....</b>	<b>170</b>
3.12.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	170
3.12.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	170
<b>3.13. FWDGT .....</b>	<b>189</b>
3.13.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	189
3.13.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	190
<b>3.14. GPIO .....</b>	<b>195</b>
3.14.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	195
3.14.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	195
<b>3.15. I2C .....</b>	<b>208</b>
3.15.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	209
3.15.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	209
<b>3.16. MISC .....</b>	<b>234</b>
3.16.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	234
3.16.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	235
<b>3.17. PMU .....</b>	<b>241</b>
3.17.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	242
3.17.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	242
<b>3.18. RCU .....</b>	<b>249</b>
3.18.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	249
3.18.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	250
<b>3.19. RTC .....</b>	<b>281</b>
3.19.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	281
3.19.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	282
<b>3.20. SPI .....</b>	<b>291</b>
3.20.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers .....	291
3.20.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions .....	291

---

<b>3.21.</b>	<b>TIMER.....</b>	<b>317</b>
3.21.1.	Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	317
3.21.2.	Descriptions of Peripheral functions.....	317
<b>3.22.</b>	<b>USART.....</b>	<b>373</b>
3.22.1.	Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	373
3.22.2.	Descriptions of Peripheral functions.....	373
<b>3.23.</b>	<b>WWDGT.....</b>	<b>408</b>
3.23.1.	Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	408
3.23.2.	Descriptions of Peripheral functions.....	408
<b>4.</b>	<b>Revision history.....</b>	<b>414</b>

## List of Figures

Figure 2-1. File structure of firmware library of GD32C11x .....	23
Figure 2-2. Select peripheral example files .....	25
Figure 2-3. Copy the peripheral example files .....	26
Figure 2-4. Open the project file .....	26
Figure 2-5. Compile-debug-download .....	27

## List of Tables

Table 1-1. Peripherals .....	21
Table 2-1. Function descriptions of Firmware Library .....	27
Table 3-1. Peripheral function format of Firmware Library .....	29
Table 3-2. ADC Registers .....	29
Table 3-3. ADC firmware function .....	30
Table 3-4. Function adc_deinit .....	31
Table 3-5. Function adc_mode_config .....	32
Table 3-6. Function adc_special_function_config .....	33
Table 3-7. Function adc_data_alignment_config .....	33
Table 3-8. Function adc_enable .....	34
Table 3-9. Function adc_disable .....	35
Table 3-10. Function adc_calibration_enable .....	35
Table 3-11. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable .....	36
Table 3-12. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable .....	36
Table 3-13. Function adc_resolution_config .....	37
Table 3-14. Function adc_oversample_mode_config .....	37
Table 3-15. Function adc_oversample_mode_enable .....	39
Table 3-16. Function adc_oversample_mode_disable .....	39
Table 3-17. Function adc_dma_mode_enable .....	40
Table 3-18. Function adc_dma_mode_disable .....	40
Table 3-19. Function adc_discontinuous_mode_config .....	41
Table 3-20. Function adc_channel_length_config .....	42
Table 3-21. Function adc_regular_channel_config .....	42
Table 3-22. Function adc_inserted_channel_config .....	44
Table 3-23. Function adc_inserted_channel_offset_config .....	45
Table 3-24. Function adc_external_trigger_source_config .....	45
Table 3-25. Function adc_external_trigger_config .....	47
Table 3-26. Function adc_software_trigger_enable .....	48
Table 3-27. Function adc_regular_data_read .....	48
Table 3-28. Function adc_inserted_data_read .....	49
Table 3-29. Function adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read .....	49
Table 3-30. Function adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable .....	50
Table 3-31. Function adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable .....	51
Table 3-32. Function adc_watchdog_disable .....	51
Table 3-33. Function adc_watchdog_threshold_config .....	52
Table 3-34. Function adc_flag_get .....	52
Table 3-35. Function adc_flag_clear .....	53
Table 3-36. Function adc_regular_software_startconv_flag_get .....	54
Table 3-37. Function adc_inserted_software_startconv_flag_get .....	54
Table 3-38. Function adc_interrupt_flag_get .....	55

Table 3-39. Function <code>adc_interrupt_flag_clear</code> .....	56
Table 3-40. Function <code>adc_interrupt_enable</code> .....	56
Table 3-41. Function <code>adc_interrupt_disable</code> .....	57
Table 3-42. BKP Registers .....	58
Table 3-43. BKP firmware function.....	58
Table 3-44. Function <code>bkp_deinit</code> .....	59
Table 3-45. Function <code>bkp_data_write</code> .....	59
Table 3-46. Function <code>bkp_data_read</code> .....	60
Table 3-47. Function <code>bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable</code> .....	60
Table 3-48. Function <code>bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable</code> .....	61
Table 3-49. Function <code>bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable</code> .....	61
Table 3-50. Function <code>bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable</code> .....	62
Table 3-51. Function <code>bkp_rtc_output_select</code> .....	62
Table 3-52. Function <code>bkp_rtc_clock_output_select</code> .....	63
Table 3-53. Function <code>bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction_select</code> .....	63
Table 3-54. Function <code>bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set</code> .....	64
Table 3-55. Function <code>bkp_tamper_detection_enable</code> .....	64
Table 3-56. Function <code>bkp_tamper_detection_disable</code> .....	65
Table 3-57. Function <code>bkp_tamper_active_level_set</code> .....	65
Table 3-58. Function <code>bkp_interrupt_enable</code> .....	66
Table 3-59. Function <code>bkp_interrupt_disable</code> .....	66
Table 3-60. Function <code>bkp_flag_get</code> .....	67
Table 3-61. Function <code>bkp_flag_clear</code> .....	67
Table 3-62. Function <code>bkp_interrupt_flag_get</code> .....	68
Table 3-63. Function <code>bkp_interrupt_flag_clear</code> .....	68
Table 3-64. CAN Registers .....	69
Table 3-65. CAN firmware function .....	70
Table 3-66. Structure <code>can_parameter_struct</code> .....	71
Table 3-67. Structure <code>can_transmit_message_struct</code> .....	71
Table 3-68. Structure <code>can_receive_message_struct</code> .....	71
Table 3-69. Structure <code>can_filter_parameter_struct</code> .....	72
Table 3-70. Structure <code>can_fd_tdc_struct</code> .....	72
Table 3-71. Structure <code>can_fdframe_struct</code> .....	72
Table 3-72. Function <code>can_deinit</code> .....	73
Table 3-73. Function <code>can_struct_para_init</code> .....	74
Table 3-74. Function <code>can_init</code> .....	74
Table 3-75. Function <code>can_fd_init</code> .....	75
Table 3-76. Function <code>can_filter_init</code> .....	76
Table 3-77. Function <code>can_filter_mask_mode_init</code> .....	77
Table 3-78. Function <code>can_monitor_mode_set</code> .....	78
Table 3-79. Function <code>can_fd_function_enable</code> .....	78
Table 3-80. Function <code>can_fd_function_disable</code> .....	79
Table 3-81. Function <code>can1_filter_start_bank</code> .....	79
Table 3-82. Function <code>can_debug_freeze_enable</code> .....	80

Table 3-83. Function can_debug_freeze_disable .....	81
Table 3-84. Function can_time_trigger_mode_enable.....	81
Table 3-85. Function can_time_trigger_mode_disable.....	82
Table 3-86. Function can_message_transmit.....	83
Table 3-87. Function can_transmit_states .....	84
Table 3-88. Function can_transmission_stop .....	85
Table 3-89. Function can_message_receive .....	86
Table 3-90. Function can_fifo_release .....	87
Table 3-91. Function can_receive_message_length_get .....	88
Table 3-92. Function can_working_mode_set.....	89
Table 3-93. Function can_wakeup .....	90
Table 3-94. Function can_error_get .....	91
Table 3-95. Function can_receive_error_number_get .....	91
Table 3-96. Function can_transmit_error_number_get .....	92
Table 3-97. Function can_interrupt_enable .....	93
Table 3-98. Function can_interrupt_disable .....	94
Table 3-99. Function can_flag_get .....	95
Table 3-100. Function can_flag_clear .....	96
Table 3-101. Function can_interrupt_flag_get.....	97
Table 3-102. Function can_interrupt_flag_clear .....	98
Table 3-103. CRC Registers .....	99
Table 3-104. CRC firmware function .....	99
Table 3-105. Function crc_deinit .....	99
Table 3-106. Function crc_data_register_reset.....	100
Table 3-107. Function crc_data_register_read.....	100
Table 3-108. Function crc_free_data_register_read.....	101
Table 3-109. Function crc_free_data_register_write.....	101
Table 3-110. Function crc_single_data_calculate.....	102
Table 3-111. Function crc_block_data_calculate .....	102
Table 3-112. CTC Registers.....	103
Table 3-113. CTC firmware function .....	104
Table 3-114. Function ctc_deinit .....	104
Table 3-115. Function ctc_counter_enable .....	105
Table 3-116. Function ctc_counter_disable .....	105
Table 3-117. Function ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config .....	106
Table 3-118. Function ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate .....	106
Table 3-119. Function ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config .....	107
Table 3-120. Function ctc_refsource_polarity_config .....	107
Table 3-121. Function ctc_refsource_signal_select.....	108
Table 3-122. Function ctc_refsource_prescaler_config .....	108
Table 3-123. Function ctc_clock_limit_value_config .....	109
Table 3-124. Function ctc_counter_reload_value_config .....	110
Table 3-125. Function ctc_counter_capture_value_read .....	110
Table 3-126. Function ctc_counter_direction_read.....	111



Table 3-127. Function <code>ctc_counter_reload_value_read</code> .....	111
Table 3-128. Function <code>ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read</code> .....	112
Table 3-129. Function <code>ctc_interrupt_enable</code> .....	112
Table 3-130. Function <code>ctc_interrupt_disable</code> .....	113
Table 3-131. Function <code>ctc_interrupt_flag_get</code> .....	113
Table 3-132. Function <code>ctc_interrupt_flag_clear</code> .....	114
Table 3-133. Function <code>ctc_flag_get</code> .....	115
Table 3-134. Function <code>ctc_flag_clear</code> .....	116
Table 3-135. DAC Registers .....	116
Table 3-136. DAC firmware function .....	117
Table 3-137. Function <code>dac_deinit</code> .....	118
Table 3-138. Function <code>dac_enable</code> .....	118
Table 3-139. Function <code>dac_disable</code> .....	119
Table 3-140. Function <code>dac_dma_enable</code> .....	119
Table 3-141. Function <code>dac_dma_disable</code> .....	120
Table 3-142. Function <code>dac_output_buffer_enable</code> .....	120
Table 3-143. Function <code>dac_output_buffer_disable</code> .....	121
Table 3-144. Function <code>dac_output_value_get</code> .....	121
Table 3-145. Function <code>dac_data_set</code> .....	122
Table 3-146. Function <code>dac_trigger_enable</code> .....	123
Table 3-147. Function <code>dac_trigger_disable</code> .....	123
Table 3-148. Function <code>dac_trigger_source_config</code> .....	124
Table 3-149. Function <code>dac_software_trigger_enable</code> .....	125
Table 3-150. Function <code>dac_wave_mode_config</code> .....	126
Table 3-151. Function <code>dac_lfsr_noise_config</code> .....	126
Table 3-152. Function <code>dac_triangle_noise_config</code> .....	127
Table 3-153. Function <code>dac_concurrent_enable</code> .....	128
Table 3-154. Function <code>dac_concurrent_disable</code> .....	128
Table 3-155. Function <code>dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable</code> .....	129
Table 3-156. Function <code>dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable</code> .....	129
Table 3-157. Function <code>dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable</code> .....	130
Table 3-158. Function <code>dac_concurrent_data_set</code> .....	130
Table 3-159. DBG Registers.....	131
Table 3-160. DBG firmware function .....	131
Table 3-161. Enum <code>dbg_periph_enum</code> .....	132
Table 3-162. Function <code>dbg_id_get</code> .....	132
Table 3-163. Function <code>dbg_low_power_enable</code> .....	133
Table 3-164. Function <code>dbg_low_power_disable</code> .....	133
Table 3-165. Function <code>dbg_periph_enable</code> .....	134
Table 3-166. Function <code>dbg_periph_disable</code> .....	135
Table 3-167. Function <code>dbg_trace_pin_enable</code> .....	135
Table 3-168. Function <code>dbg_trace_pin_disable</code> .....	136
Table 3-169. DMA Registers.....	136
Table 3-170. DMA firmware function .....	137

Table 3-171. Structure dma_parameter_struct.....	138
Table 3-172. Function dma_deinit .....	138
Table 3-173. Function dma_struct_para_init .....	139
Table 3-174. Function dma_init.....	139
Table 3-175. Function dma_circulation_enable .....	140
Table 3-176. Function dma_circulation_disable .....	141
Table 3-177. Function dma_memory_to_memory_enable .....	141
Table 3-178. Function dma_memory_to_memory_disable .....	142
Table 3-179. Function dma_channel_enable .....	142
Table 3-180. Function dma_channel_disable .....	143
Table 3-181. Function dma_periph_address_config .....	144
Table 3-182. Function dma_memory_address_config.....	144
Table 3-183. Function dma_transfer_number_config .....	145
Table 3-184. Function dma_transfer_number_get.....	146
Table 3-185. Function dma_priority_config .....	146
Table 3-186. Function dma_memory_width_config .....	147
Table 3-187. Function dma_periph_width_config .....	148
Table 3-188. Function dma_memory_increase_enable .....	149
Table 3-189. Function dma_memory_increase_disable .....	149
Table 3-190. Function dma_periph_increase_enable .....	150
Table 3-191. Function dma_periph_increase_disable .....	150
Table 3-192. Function dma_transfer_direction_config.....	151
Table 3-193. Function dma_flag_get .....	152
Table 3-194. Function dma_flag_clear.....	152
Table 3-195. Function dma_interrupt_flag_get .....	153
Table 3-196. Function dma_interrupt_flag_clear .....	154
Table 3-197. Function dma_interrupt_enable.....	155
Table 3-198. Function dma_interrupt_disable.....	155
Table 3-199. EXMC Registers .....	156
Table 3-200. EXMC firmware function.....	157
Table 3-201. Structure exmc_norsram_timing_parameter_struct .....	157
Table 3-202. Structure exmc_norsram_parameter_struct.....	157
Table 3-203. Function exmc_norsram_deinit .....	158
Table 3-204. Function exmc_norsram_init.....	158
Table 3-205. Function exmc_norsram_struct_para_init.....	160
Table 3-206. Function exmc_norsram_enable .....	160
Table 3-207. Function exmc_norsram_disable .....	161
Table 3-208. Function exmc_norsram_page_size_config.....	161
Table 3-209. EXTI Registers.....	162
Table 3-210. EXTI firmware function .....	162
Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum.....	163
Table 3-212. Enum exti_mode_enum .....	163
Table 3-213. Enum exti_trig_type_enum .....	163
Table 3-214. Function exti_deinit.....	164

Table 3-215. Function exti_init .....	164
Table 3-216. Function exti_interrupt_enable .....	165
Table 3-217. Function exti_interrupt_disable .....	165
Table 3-218. Function exti_event_enable .....	166
Table 3-219. Function exti_event_disable .....	166
Table 3-220. Function exti_software_interrupt_enable .....	167
Table 3-221. Function exti_software_interrupt_disable .....	167
Table 3-222. Function exti_flag_get .....	168
Table 3-223. Function exti_flag_clear .....	168
Table 3-224. Function exti_interrupt_flag_get .....	169
Table 3-225. Function exti_interrupt_flag_clear .....	169
Table 3-226. FMC Registers .....	170
Table 3-227. FMC firmware function .....	170
Table 3-228. Enum fmc_state_enum .....	171
Table 3-229. Function fmc_wsnt_set .....	171
Table 3-230. Function fmc_prefetch_enable .....	172
Table 3-231. Function fmc_prefetch_disable .....	172
Table 3-232. Function fmc_ibus_enable .....	173
Table 3-233. Function fmc_ibus_disable .....	173
Table 3-234. Function fmc_dbus_enable .....	174
Table 3-235. Function fmc_dbus_disable .....	174
Table 3-236. Function fmc_ibus_reset .....	175
Table 3-237. Function fmc_dbus_reset .....	175
Table 3-238. Function fmc_program_width_set .....	176
Table 3-239. Function fmc_unlock .....	176
Table 3-240. Function fmc_lock .....	177
Table 3-241. Function fmc_page_erase .....	177
Table 3-242. Function fmc_mass_erase .....	178
Table 3-243. Function fmc_doubleword_program .....	178
Table 3-244. Function fmc_word_program .....	179
Table 3-245. Function ob_unlock .....	179
Table 3-246. Function ob_lock .....	180
Table 3-247. Function ob_erase .....	180
Table 3-248. Function ob_write_protection_enable .....	181
Table 3-249. Function ob_security_protection_config .....	181
Table 3-250. Function ob_user_write .....	182
Table 3-251. Function ob_data_program .....	182
Table 3-252. Function ob_user_get .....	183
Table 3-253. Function ob_data_program .....	183
Table 3-254. Function ob_write_protection_get .....	184
Table 3-255. Function ob_security_protection_flag_get .....	184
Table 3-256. Function fmc_interrupt_enable .....	185
Table 3-257. Function fmc_interrupt_disable .....	185
Table 3-258. Function fmc_flag_get .....	186

Table 3-259. Function <code>fmc_flag_clear</code> .....	186
Table 3-260. Function <code>fmc_interrupt_flag_get</code> .....	187
Table 3-261. Function <code>fmc_interrupt_flag_clear</code> .....	188
Table 3-262. Function <code>fmc_state_get</code> .....	188
Table 3-263. Function <code>fmc_ready_wait</code> .....	189
Table 3-264. FWDGT Registers .....	189
Table 3-265. FWDGT firmware function.....	190
Table 3-266. Function <code>fwdgt_write_enable</code> .....	190
Table 3-267. Function <code>fwdgt_write_disable</code> .....	191
Table 3-268. Function <code>fwdgt_enable</code> .....	191
Table 3-269. Function <code>fwdgt_prescaler_value_config</code> .....	191
Table 3-270. Function <code>fwdgt_reload_value_config</code> .....	192
Table 3-271. Function <code>fwdgt_counter_reload</code> .....	193
Table 3-272. Function <code>fwdgt_config</code> .....	193
Table 3-273. Function <code>fwdgt_flag_get</code> <code>fwdgt_write_disable</code> .....	194
Table 3-274. GPIO Registers.....	195
Table 3-275. GPIO firmware function .....	195
Table 3-276. Function <code>gpio_deinit</code> .....	196
Table 3-277. Function <code>gpio_afio_deinit</code> .....	196
Table 3-278. Function <code>gpio_init</code> .....	197
Table 3-279. Function <code>gpio_bit_set</code> .....	198
Table 3-280. Function <code>gpio_bit_reset</code> .....	199
Table 3-281. Function <code>gpio_bit_write</code> .....	199
Table 3-282. Function <code>gpio_port_write</code> .....	200
Table 3-283. Function <code>gpio_input_bit_get</code> .....	200
Table 3-284. Function <code>gpio_input_port_get</code> .....	201
Table 3-285. Function <code>gpio_output_bit_get</code> .....	202
Table 3-286. Function <code>gpio_output_port_get</code> .....	202
Table 3-287. Function <code>gpio_pin_remap_config</code> .....	203
Table 3-288. Function <code>gpio_exti_source_select</code> .....	205
Table 3-289. Function <code>gpio_event_output_config</code> .....	205
Table 3-290. Function <code>gpio_event_output_enable</code> .....	206
Table 3-291. Function <code>gpio_event_output_disable</code> .....	206
Table 3-292. Function <code>gpio_pin_lock</code> .....	207
Table 3-293. Function <code>gpio_compensation_config</code> .....	207
Table 3-294. Function <code>gpio_compensation_flag_get</code> .....	208
Table 3-295. I2C Registers .....	209
Table 3-296. I2C firmware function.....	209
Table 3-297. Enum <code>i2c_flag_enum</code> .....	210
Table 3-298. Enum <code>i2c_interrupt_flag_enum</code> .....	211
Table 3-299. Enum <code>i2c_interrupt_enum</code> .....	211
Table 3-300. Function <code>i2c_deinit</code> .....	212
Table 3-301. Function <code>i2c_clock_config</code> .....	212
Table 3-302. Function <code>i2c_mode_addr_config</code> .....	213

Table 3-303. Function i2c_smbus_type_config .....	214
Table 3-304. Function i2c_ack_config .....	214
Table 3-305. Function i2c_ackpos_config .....	215
Table 3-306. Function i2c_master_addressing .....	216
Table 3-307. Function i2c_dualaddr_enable .....	216
Table 3-308. Function i2c_dualaddr_disable .....	217
Table 3-309. Function i2c_enable .....	217
Table 3-310. Function i2c_disable .....	218
Table 3-311. Function i2c_start_on_bus .....	218
Table 3-312. Function i2c_stop_on_bus .....	219
Table 3-313. Function i2c_data_transmit .....	219
Table 3-314. Function i2c_data_receive .....	220
Table 3-315. Function i2c_dma_config .....	220
Table 3-316. Function i2c_dma_last_transfer_config .....	221
Table 3-317. Function i2c_stretch_scl_low_config .....	222
Table 3-318. Function i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config .....	222
Table 3-319. Function i2c_software_reset_config .....	223
Table 3-320. Function i2c_pec_config .....	223
Table 3-321. Function i2c_pec_transfer_config .....	224
Table 3-322. Function i2c_pec_value_get .....	225
Table 3-323. Function i2c_smbus_alert_config .....	225
Table 3-324. Function i2c_smbus_arp_config .....	226
Table 3-325. Function i2c_sam_enable .....	226
Table 3-326. Function i2c_sam_disable .....	227
Table 3-327. Function i2c_sam_timeout_enable .....	227
Table 3-328. Function i2c_sam_timeout_disable .....	228
Table 3-329. Function i2c_flag_get .....	228
Table 3-330. Function i2c_flag_clear .....	230
Table 3-331. Function i2c_interrupt_enable .....	231
Table 3-332. Function i2c_interrupt_disable .....	231
Table 3-333. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_get .....	232
Table 3-334. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_clear .....	233
Table 3-335. NVIC Registers .....	234
Table 3-336. SysTick Registers .....	235
Table 3-337. IRQn_Type .....	235
Table 3-338. MISC firmware function .....	237
Table 3-339. Function nvic_priority_group_set .....	237
Table 3-340. Function nvic_irq_enable .....	238
Table 3-341. Function nvic_irq_disable .....	239
Table 3-342. Function nvic_vector_table_set .....	239
Table 3-343. Function system_lowpower_set .....	240
Table 3-344. Function system_lowpower_reset .....	240
Table 3-345. Function systick_clksource_set .....	241
Table 3-346. PMU Registers .....	242

Table 3-347. PMU firmware function .....	242
Table 3-348. Function pmu_deinit .....	242
Table 3-349. Function pmu_lvd_select .....	243
Table 3-350. Function pmu_ldo_output_select .....	243
Table 3-351. Function pmu_lvd_disable .....	244
Table 3-352. Function pmu_to_sleepmode .....	244
Table 3-353. Function pmu_to_deepsleepmode .....	245
Table 3-354. Function pmu_to_standbymode .....	246
Table 3-355. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_enable .....	246
Table 3-356. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_disable .....	247
Table 3-357. Function pmu_backup_write_enable .....	247
Table 3-358. Function pmu_backup_write_disable .....	248
Table 3-359. Function pmu_flag_get .....	248
Table 3-360. Function pmu_flag_clear .....	249
Table 3-361. RCU Registers .....	249
Table 3-362. RCU firmware function .....	250
Table 3-363. Enum rcu_periph_enum .....	251
Table 3-364. Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum .....	252
Table 3-365. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum .....	252
Table 3-366. Enum rcu_flag_enum .....	254
Table 3-367. Enum rcu_int_flag_enum .....	254
Table 3-368. Enum rcu_int_flag_clear_enum .....	255
Table 3-369. Enum rcu_int_enum .....	255
Table 3-370. Enum rcu_osc_type_enum .....	256
Table 3-371. Enum rcu_clock_freq_enum .....	256
Table 3-372. Function rcu_deinit .....	256
Table 3-373. Function rcu_periph_clock_enable .....	257
Table 3-374. Function rcu_periph_clock_disable .....	257
Table 3-375. Function rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable .....	258
Table 3-376. Function rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable .....	258
Table 3-377. Function rcu_periph_reset_enable .....	259
Table 3-378. Function rcu_periph_reset_disable .....	259
Table 3-379. Function rcu_bkp_reset_enable .....	260
Table 3-380. Function rcu_bkp_reset_disable .....	260
Table 3-381. Function rcu_system_clock_source_config .....	261
Table 3-382. Function rcu_system_clock_source_get .....	261
Table 3-383. Function rcu_ahb_clock_config .....	262
Table 3-384. Function rcu_apb1_clock_config .....	262
Table 3-385. Function rcu_apb2_clock_config .....	263
Table 3-386. Function rcu_ckout0_config .....	264
Table 3-387. Function rcu_pll_config .....	265
Table 3-388. Function rcu_pllpresel_config .....	265
Table 3-389. Function rcu_predv0_config .....	266
Table 3-390. Function rcu_predv1_config .....	266

Table 3-391. Function rcu_pll1_config .....	267
Table 3-392. Function rcu_pll2_config .....	267
Table 3-393. Function rcu_adc_clock_config.....	268
Table 3-394. Function rcu_usb_clock_config .....	269
Table 3-395. Function rcu_rtc_clock_config .....	270
Table 3-396. Function rcu_i2s1_clock_config.....	270
Table 3-397. Function rcu_i2s2_clock_config.....	271
Table 3-398. Function rcu_ck48m_clock_config .....	271
Table 3-399. Function rcu_flag_get.....	272
Table 3-400. Function rcu_all_reset_flag_clear .....	273
Table 3-401. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_get .....	273
Table 3-402. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_clear .....	274
Table 3-403. Function rcu_interrupt_enable.....	274
Table 3-404. Function rcu_interrupt_disable.....	275
Table 3-405. Function rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config.....	275
Table 3-406. Function rcu_osci_stab_wait .....	276
Table 3-407. Function rcu_osci_on .....	276
Table 3-408. Function rcu_osci_off.....	277
Table 3-409. Function rcu_osci_bypass_mode_enable .....	277
Table 3-410. Function rcu_osci_bypass_mode_disable .....	278
Table 3-411. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable.....	278
Table 3-412. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable .....	279
Table 3-413. Function rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set.....	279
Table 3-414. Function rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set.....	280
Table 3-415. Function rcu_clock_freq_get.....	280
Table 3-416. RTC Registers .....	281
Table 3-417. RTC firmware function.....	282
Table 3-418. Function rtc_configuration_mode_enter.....	282
Table 3-419. Function rtc_configuration_mode_exit .....	283
Table 3-420. Function rtc_counter_set.....	283
Table 3-421. Function rtc_prescaler_set .....	284
Table 3-422. Function rtc_lwoff_wait .....	284
Table 3-423. Function rtc_register_sync_wait .....	285
Table 3-424. Function rtc_alarm_config.....	285
Table 3-425. Function rtc_counter_get.....	286
Table 3-426. Function rtc_divider_get .....	286
Table 3-427. Function rtc_flag_get.....	287
Table 3-428. Function rtc_flag_clear.....	287
Table 3-429. Function rtc_interrupt_flag_get .....	288
Table 3-430. Function rtc_interrupt_flag_clear .....	289
Table 3-431. Function rtc_interrupt_enable.....	289
Table 3-432. Function rtc_interrupt_disable.....	290
Table 3-433. SPI/I2S Registers .....	291
Table 3-434. SPI/I2S firmware function.....	292



Table 3-435. spi_parameter_struct.....	293
Table 3-436. Function spi_i2s_deinit .....	293
Table 3-437. Function spi_struct_para_init .....	294
Table 3-438. Function spi_init .....	294
Table 3-439. Function spi_enable .....	295
Table 3-440. Function spi_disable .....	295
Table 3-441. Function i2s_init .....	296
Table 3-442. Function i2s_psc_config .....	297
Table 3-443. Function i2s_enable .....	298
Table 3-444. Function i2s_disable .....	299
Table 3-445. Function spi_nss_output_enable .....	299
Table 3-446. Function spi_nss_output_disable .....	300
Table 3-447. Function spi_nss_internal_high .....	300
Table 3-448. Function spi_nss_internal_low .....	301
Table 3-449. Function spi_dma_enable .....	301
Table 3-450. Function spi_dma_disable .....	302
Table 3-451. Function spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config .....	303
Table 3-452. Function spi_i2s_data_transmit.....	303
Table 3-453. Function spi_i2s_data_receive .....	304
Table 3-454. Function spi_bidirectional_transfer_config.....	304
Table 3-455. Function spi_crc_polynomial_set.....	305
Table 3-456. Function spi_crc_polynomial_get .....	305
Table 3-457. Function spi_crc_on.....	306
Table 3-458. Function spi_crc_off .....	306
Table 3-459. Function spi_crc_next .....	307
Table 3-460. Function spi_crc_get.....	307
Table 3-461. Function spi_ti_mode_enable .....	308
Table 3-462. Function spi_ti_mode_disable .....	309
Table 3-463. Function spi_nssp_mode_enable.....	309
Table 3-464. Function spi_nssp_mode_disable.....	310
Table 3-465. Function spi_quad_enable.....	310
Table 3-466. Function spi_quad_disable.....	311
Table 3-467. Function spi_quad_write_enable.....	311
Table 3-468. Function spi_quad_read_enable.....	312
Table 3-469. Function spi_quad_io23_output_enable .....	312
Table 3-470. Function spi_quad_io23_output_disable .....	313
Table 3-471. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_enable .....	313
Table 3-472. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_disable .....	314
Table 3-473. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get .....	314
Table 3-474. Function spi_i2s_flag_get .....	315
Table 3-475. Function spi_crc_error_clear .....	316
Table 3-476. TIMEx Registers .....	317
Table 3-477. TIMEx firmware function.....	318
Table 3-478. Structure timer_parameter_struct .....	320



Table 3-479. Structure timer_break_parameter_struct.....	320
Table 3-480. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct.....	321
Table 3-481. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct.....	321
Table 3-482. Function timer_deinit.....	321
Table 3-483. Function timer_struct_para_init.....	322
Table 3-484. Function timer_init .....	322
Table 3-485. Function timer_enable .....	323
Table 3-486. Function timer_disable .....	324
Table 3-487. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable .....	324
Table 3-488. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable .....	325
Table 3-489. Function timer_update_event_enable .....	325
Table 3-490. Function timer_update_event_disable .....	326
Table 3-491. Function timer_counter_alignment .....	326
Table 3-492. Function timer_counter_up_direction .....	327
Table 3-493. timer_counter_down_direction .....	327
Table 3-494. Function timer_prescaler_config.....	328
Table 3-495. Function timer_repetition_value_config .....	329
Table 3-496. Function timer_autoreload_value_config .....	329
Table 3-497. Function timer_counter_value_config.....	330
Table 3-498. Function timer_counter_read .....	330
Table 3-499. Function timer_prescaler_read .....	331
Table 3-500. Function timer_single_pulse_mode_config .....	331
Table 3-501. Function timer_update_source_config.....	332
Table 3-502. Function timer_dma_enable .....	333
Table 3-503. Function timer_dma_disable .....	334
Table 3-504. Function timer_channel_dma_request_source_select.....	334
Table 3-505. Function timer_dma_transfer_config.....	335
Table 3-506. Function timer_event_software_generate.....	337
Table 3-507. Function timer_break_struct_para_init .....	338
Table 3-508. Function timer_break_config .....	338
Table 3-509. Function timer_break_enable.....	339
Table 3-510. Function timer_break_disable.....	340
Table 3-511. Function timer_automatic_output_enable .....	340
Table 3-512. Function timer_automatic_output_disable .....	341
Table 3-513. Function timer_primary_output_config.....	341
Table 3-514. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_config .....	342
Table 3-515. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config.....	342
Table 3-516. Function timer_channel_output_struct_para_init .....	343
Table 3-517. Function timer_channel_output_config .....	344
Table 3-518. Function timer_channel_output_mode_config .....	345
Table 3-519. Function timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config.....	346
Table 3-520. Function timer_channel_output_shadow_config .....	346
Table 3-521. Function timer_channel_output_fast_config.....	347
Table 3-522. Function timer_channel_output_clear_config .....	348

Table 3-523. Function timer_channel_output_polarity_config.....	349
Table 3-524. Function timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config .....	350
Table 3-525. Function timer_channel_output_state_config .....	351
Table 3-526. Function timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config .....	351
Table 3-527. Function timer_channel_input_struct_para_init.....	352
Table 3-528. Function timer_input_capture_config.....	353
Table 3-529. Function timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config .....	354
Table 3-530. Function timer_channel_capture_value_register_read .....	354
Table 3-531. Function timer_input_pwm_capture_config.....	355
Table 3-532. Function timer_hall_mode_config.....	356
Table 3-533. Function timer_input_trigger_source_select .....	357
Table 3-534. Function timer_master_output_trigger_source_select .....	358
Table 3-535. Function timer_slave_mode_select .....	359
Table 3-536. Function timer_master_slave_mode_config .....	360
Table 3-537. Function timer_external_trigger_config .....	360
Table 3-538. Function timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config.....	361
Table 3-539. Function timer_internal_clock_config .....	362
Table 3-540. Function timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config .....	363
Table 3-541. Function timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config .....	363
Table 3-542. Function timer_external_clock_mode0_config .....	364
Table 3-543. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_config .....	365
Table 3-544. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_disable .....	366
Table 3-545. Function timer_write_chxval_register_config.....	367
Table 3-546. Function timer_output_value_selection_config .....	367
Table 3-547. Function timer_interrupt_enable .....	368
Table 3-548. Function timer_interrupt_disable .....	369
Table 3-549. Function timer_interrupt_flag_get.....	370
Table 3-550. Function timer_interrupt_flag_clear.....	370
Table 3-551. Function timer_flag_get .....	371
Table 3-552. Function timer_flag_clear .....	372
Table 3-553. USART Registers .....	373
Table 3-554. USART firmware function.....	374
Table 3-555. usart_flag_enum .....	375
Table 3-556. usart_interrupt_flag_enum .....	375
Table 3-557. usart_interrupt_enum .....	376
Table 3-558. usart_invert_enum.....	376
Table 3-559. Function usart_deinit.....	377
Table 3-560. Function usart_baudrate_set .....	377
Table 3-561. Function usart_parity_config .....	378
Table 3-562. Function usart_word_length_set.....	378
Table 3-563. Function usart_stop_bit_set.....	379
Table 3-564. Function usart_enable .....	380
Table 3-565. Function usart_disable .....	380
Table 3-566. Function usart_transmit_config.....	381

Table 3-567. Function <code>usart_receive_config</code> .....	381
Table 3-568. Function <code>usart_data_first_config</code> .....	382
Table 3-569. Function <code>usart_invert_config</code> .....	383
Table 3-570. Function <code>usart_receiver_timeout_enable</code> .....	383
Table 3-571. Function <code>usart_receiver_timeout_disable</code> .....	384
Table 3-572. Function <code>usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config</code> .....	384
Table 3-573. Function <code>usart_data_transmit</code> .....	385
Table 3-574. Function <code>usart_data_receive</code> .....	386
Table 3-575. Function <code>usart_address_config</code> .....	386
Table 3-576. Function <code>usart_mute_mode_enable</code> .....	387
Table 3-577. Function <code>usart_mute_mode_disable</code> .....	387
Table 3-578. Function <code>usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config</code> .....	388
Table 3-579. Function <code>usart_lin_mode_enable</code> .....	388
Table 3-580. Function <code>usart_lin_mode_disable</code> .....	389
Table 3-581. Function <code>usart_lin_break_dection_length_config</code> .....	390
Table 3-582. Function <code>usart_send_break</code> .....	390
Table 3-583. Function <code>usart_halfduplex_enable</code> .....	391
Table 3-584. Function <code>usart_halfduplex_disable</code> .....	391
Table 3-585. Function <code>usart_synchronous_clock_enable</code> .....	392
Table 3-586. Function <code>usart_synchronous_clock_disable</code> .....	392
Table 3-587. Function <code>usart_synchronous_clock_config</code> .....	393
Table 3-588. Function <code>usart_guard_time_config</code> .....	394
Table 3-589. Function <code>usart_smartcard_mode_enable</code> .....	394
Table 3-590. Function <code>usart_smartcard_mode_disable</code> .....	395
Table 3-591. Function <code>usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable</code> .....	395
Table 3-592. Function <code>usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable</code> .....	396
Table 3-593. Function <code>usart_smartcard_autoretry_config</code> .....	396
Table 3-594. Function <code>usart_block_length_config</code> .....	397
Table 3-595. Function <code>usart_irda_mode_enable</code> .....	397
Table 3-596. Function <code>usart_irda_mode_disable</code> .....	398
Table 3-597. Function <code>usart_prescaler_config</code> .....	398
Table 3-598. Function <code>usart_irda_lowpower_config</code> .....	399
Table 3-599. Function <code>usart_hardware_flow_rts_config</code> .....	400
Table 3-600. Function <code>usart_hardware_flow_cts_config</code> .....	400
Table 3-601. Function <code>usart_dma_receive_config</code> .....	401
Table 3-602. Function <code>usart_dma_transmit_config</code> .....	402
Table 3-603. Function <code>usart_hardware_flow_coherence_config</code> .....	402
Table 3-604. Function <code>usart_flag_get</code> .....	403
Table 3-605. Function <code>usart_flag_clear</code> .....	404
Table 3-606. Function <code>usart_interrupt_enable</code> .....	404
Table 3-607. Function <code>usart_interrupt_disable</code> .....	405
Table 3-608. Function <code>usart_interrupt_flag_get</code> .....	406
Table 3-609. Function <code>usart_interrupt_flag_clear</code> .....	407
Table 3-610. WWDGT Registers .....	408

Table 3-611. WWDGT firmware function.....	408
Table 3-612. Function wwdgt_deinit .....	409
Table 3-613. Function wwdgt_enable .....	409
Table 3-614. Function wwdgt_counter_update .....	410
Table 3-615. Function wwdgt_config .....	410
Table 3-616. Function wwdgt_interrupt_enable .....	411
Table 3-617. Function wwdgt_flag_get .....	411
Table 3-618. Function wwdgt_flag_clear .....	412
Table 4-1. Revision history .....	414

## 1. Introduction

This manual introduces firmware library of GD32C11x devices which are 32-bit microcontrollers based on the ARM processor.

The firmware library is a firmware function package, including program, data structure and macro definitions, all the performance features of peripherals of GD32C11x devices are involved in the package. The peripheral driving code and firmware examples on evaluation board are also included in firmware library. Users need not learn each peripherals in details and it's easy to apply a peripheral by using the firmware library. Using firmware library can greatly reduce programming time, thereby reducing development costs.

The driving code of each peripheral is concluded by a group of functions, which describes all the performance features of the peripheral. Users can drive a peripheral by a group of APIs (application programming interface), all the APIs are standardized about the code structure, function name and parameter names.

All the driving source code accord with MISRA-C:2004 standard (example files accord with extended ANSI-C standard), and will not be influenced by differences of IDEs, except the startup files which are written differently according to the IDEs.

The commonly used firmware library includes all the functions of all the peripherals, so the code size and the execution speed may not be the optimal. For most applications, users can use the library functions directly, while for the applications which are strict with the code size and execution speed, the firmware library can be used as the reference resource of how to configure a peripheral, and users adjust the code according to actual needs.

The overall structure of the firmware library user manual is shown as below:

- Rules of user manual and firmware library;
- Firmware library overview;
- Functions and registers descriptions of firmware library.

### 1.1. Rules of User Manual and Firmware Library

#### 1.1.1. Peripherals

Table 1-1. Peripherals

Peripherals	Descriptions
ADC	Analog-to-digital converter
BKP	Backup registers
CAN	Controller area network
CRC	CRC calculation unit
CTC	Clock trim controller
DAC	Digital-to-analog converter

Peripherals	Descriptions
DBG	Debug
DMA	Direct memory access controller
EXMC	External memory controller
EXTI	Interrupt/event controller
FMC	Flash memory controller
FWDGT	Free watchdog timer
GPIO/AFIO	General-purpose and alternate-function I/Os
I2C	Inter-integrated circuit interface
MISC	Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller
PMU	Power management unit
RCU	Reset and clock unit
RTC	Real-time Clock
SPI/I2S	Serial peripheral interface/Inter-IC sound
TIMER	TIMER
USART	Universal synchronous/asynchronous receiver /transmitter
WWDGT	Window watchdog timer
USBFS	Universal serial bus full-speed interface

## 1.1.2. Naming rules

The firmware library naming rules are shown as below:

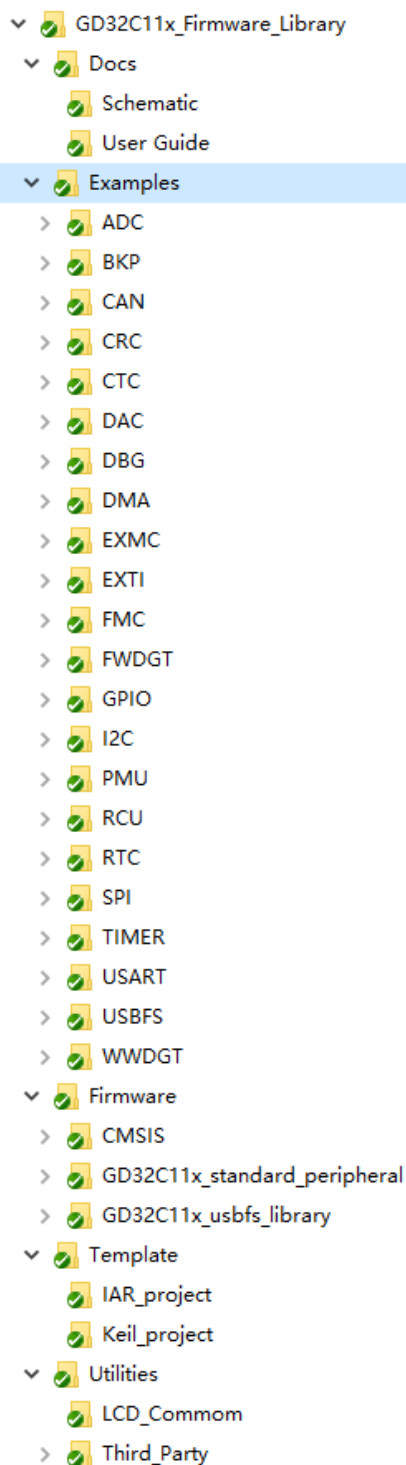
- The peripherals are shortened in XXX format, such as: ADC. More shorten information of peripherals refer to [Peripherals](#);
- The name of sourcefile and header file are started with "gd32c11x\_", such as: gd32c11x\_adc.h;
- The constants used only in one file should be defined in the used file; the constants used in many files should be defined in corresponding header file. All the constants are written in uppercase of English letters;
- Registers are handled as constants. The naming of them are written in uppercase of English letters. In most cases, register names are shortened accord with the user manual;
- Variables are written in lowercase, when concluded by several words, underlines should be adapted among words;
- The naming of peripheral functions are started with the peripheral abbreviation added with an underline, when the function name is concluded by several words, underlines should be adapted among words, and all the peripheral functions are written in lowercase.

## 2. Firmware Library Overview

### 2.1. File Structure of Firmware Library

GD32C11x\_Firmware\_Library, the file structure is shown as below:

**Figure 2-1. File structure of firmware library of GD32C11x**



### 2.1.1. Examples Folder

Examples folder, each of GD32 peripheral has a subfolder. Each subfolder contains one or more examples of the peripheral, to show how to use the peripheral correctly. Each of the example subfolder includes the files shown as below:

- `readme.txt`: the description and using guide of the example;
- `gd32c11x_libopt.h`: the header file configures all the peripherals used in the example, included by different "DEFINE" sentences (all the peripherals are enabled by default);
- `gd32c11x_it.c`: the source file include all the interrupt service routines (if no interrupt is used, then all the function bodies are empty);
- `gd32c11x_it.h`: the header file include all the prototypes of the interrupt service routines;
- `systick.c`: the source file include the precise time delay functions by using `systick`;
- `systick.h`: the header file include the prototype of the precise time delay functions by using `systick`;
- `main.c`: example code. Note: all the examples are not influenced by software IDEs.

### 2.1.2. Firmware Folder

Firmware folder includes all the subfolder and files which are the core part of the firmware:

- CMSIS subfolder includes the Cortex M4 kernel support files, the startup file based on the Cortex M4 kernel processor, the global header file of GD32C11x and system configuration file;
- GD32C11x\_standard\_peripheral subfolder:
  - Include subfolder includes all the header files of firmware library, users need not modify this folder;
  - Source subfolder includes all the source files of firmware library, users need not modify this folder;
- GD32C11x\_usbfs\_library subfolder includes all the related files about USBFS peripheral: users need not modify this folder;

**Note:** All the codes accord with MISRA-C:2004 standard, and will not be influenced by different software IDEs.

### 2.1.3. Template Folder

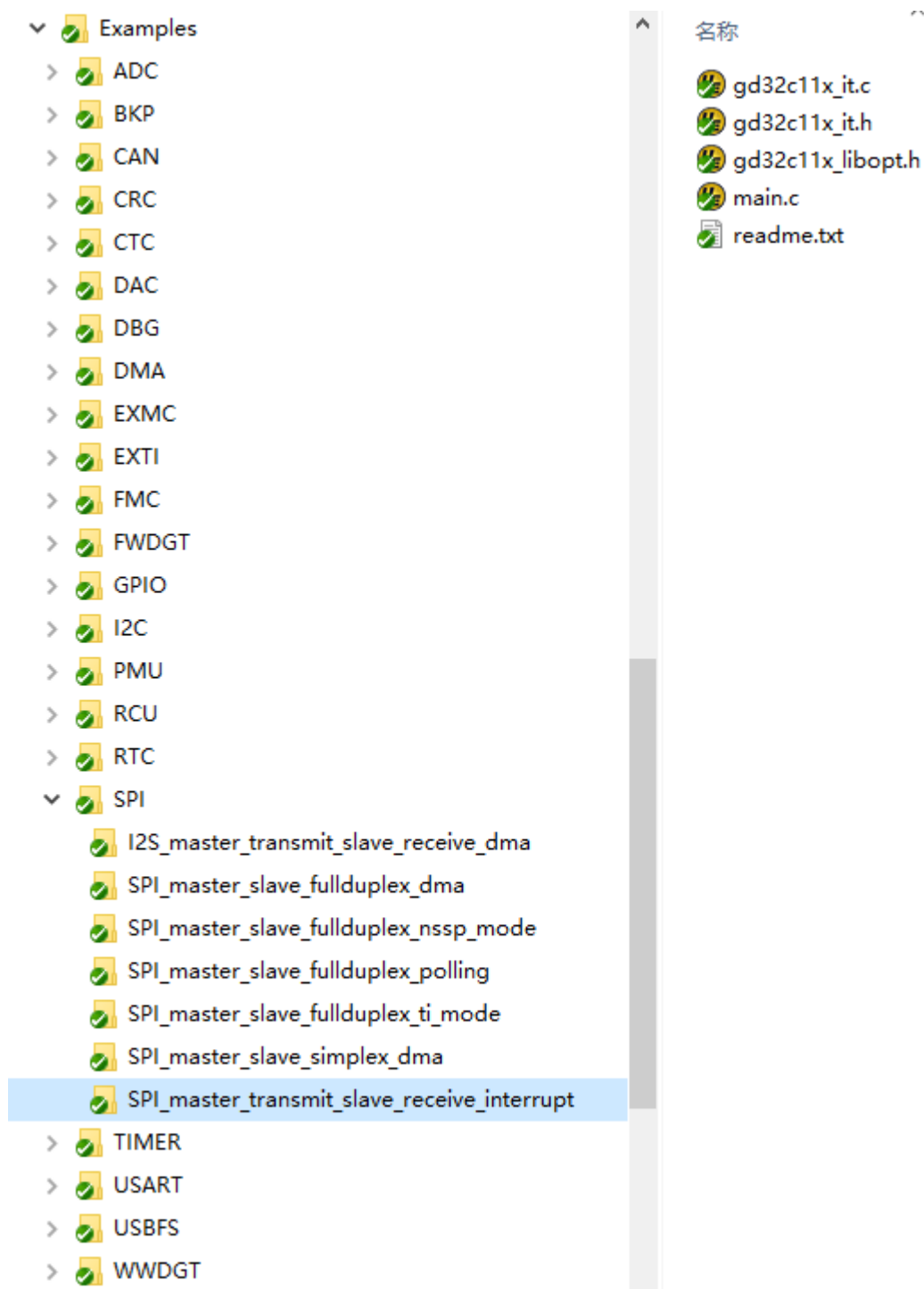
Template folder includes a simple demo of how to use LED, how to print by USART and use key to control, (IAR\_project is run in IAR, and Keil\_project is run in Keil4). User can use the project template to compile the formware examples, the steps are shown as below:

#### Select files

Open "Examples" folder, select the module to be tested, such as SPI, open "SPI" folder, select an example of SPI, such as "SPI\_master\_transmit\_slave\_receive\_interrupt", shown as below:



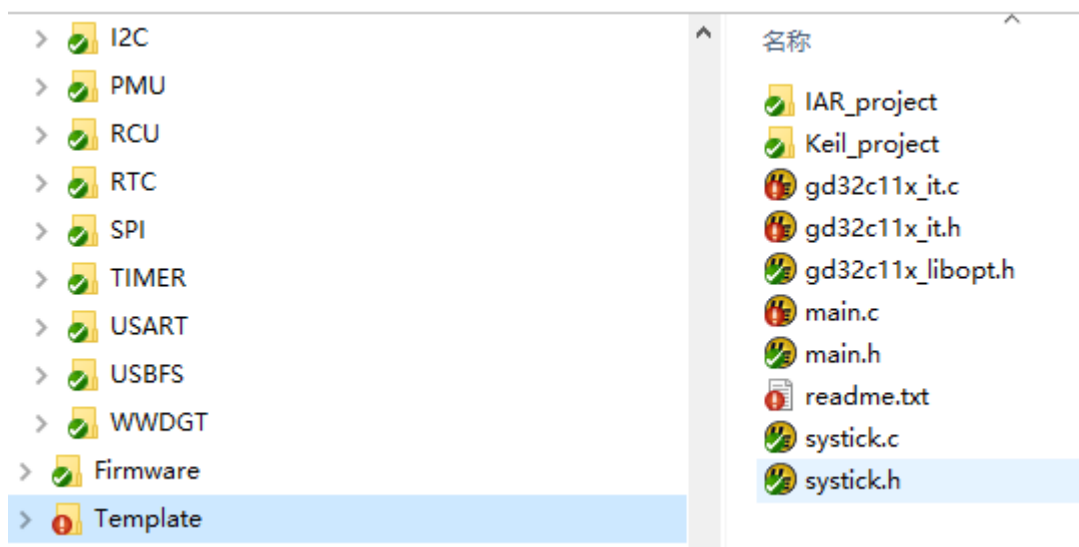
Figure 2-2. Select peripheral example files



### Copy files

Open "Template" folder, keep the folders of " IAR\_project" and " Keil\_project", and delete the other files, then copy all the files in "SPI\_master\_transmit\_slave\_receive\_interrupt" folder to the "Template" subfolder, shown as below:

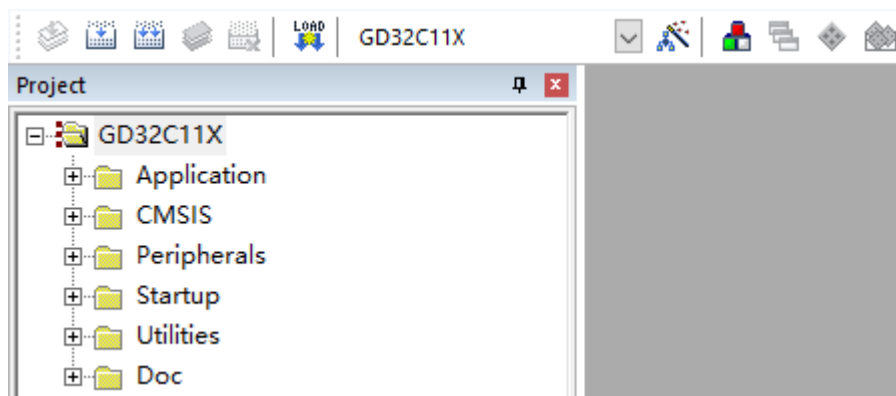
Figure 2-3. Copy the peripheral example files



### Open a project

GD provides project in Keil and IAR, users can open project in different IDEs according to their need, such as "Keil\_project", open \Template\Keil\_project\Project.uvproj, shown as below:

Figure 2-4. Open the project file

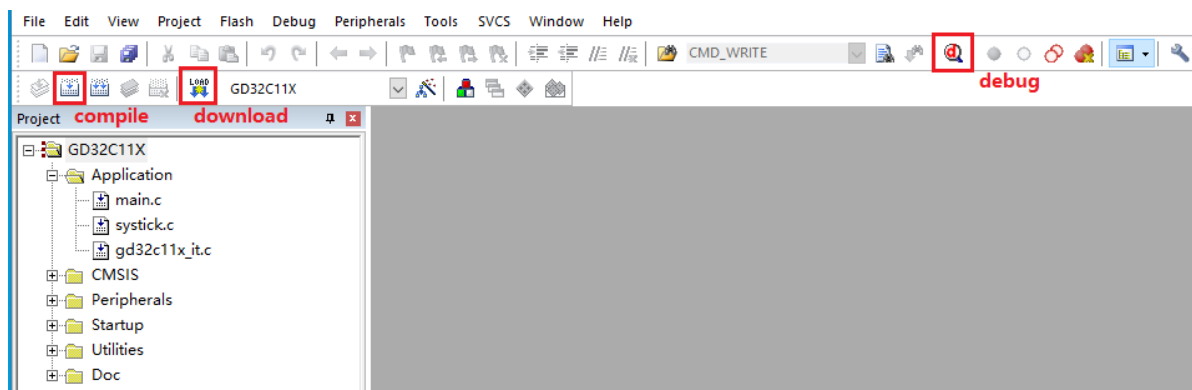


Because different module and different functions adopt different files, users should add or delete the files in project according to the copied files.

### Compile-Debug-Download

First compile the project, if there is no error, then select the right jumper cap according to the description of readme, download the project to the target board, and there will be the phenomenon showed accord with the description of readme. The usage of IDE can refer to corresponding software user guide. If users are using Keil, the figure is shown as below:

**Figure 2-5. Compile-debug-download**



## 2.1.4. Utilities Folder

Utilities folder includes files about the firmware examples on evaluation board:

- LCD\_Commom and Third\_Party subfolders include files for USB tests;
- gd32c11x\_eval.h and gd32c11x\_lcd\_eval.h are related header files of the evaluation board about running the firmware examples;
- gd32c11x\_eval.c and gd32c11x\_lcd\_eval.c are related source files of the evaluation board about running the firmware examples.

**Note:** All the codes accord with MISRA-C:2004 standard, and will not be influenced by different software IDEs.

## 2.2. File descriptions of Firmware Library

The major files about the firmware library are listed and described in the table below.

**Table 2-1. Function descriptions of Firmware Library**

Files	Descriptions
gd32c11x_libopt.h	The header file about all the header files of peripherals. It is the only one file which is necessity to be included in the user's application, to connect the firmware library and the application.
main.c	Example of main function.
gd32c11x_it.h	Header file, including all the prototypes of interrupt service routines.
gd32c11x_it.c	Source files about interrupt service routines of peripherals. User can written his own interrupt functions in this file. For the different interrupt service requests to the same interrupt vector, users can confirm the interrupt source by functions of judging interrupt flags of peripherals. The functions are included in the firmware library.

gd32c11x_xxx.h	The header file of peripheral PPP, including functions about peripheral PPP, and the variables used for functions.
gd32c11x_xxx.c	The C source file for driving peripheral PPP.
systick.h	The header file of systick.c, including prototypes of systick configuration function and delay function.
systick.c	The source file about systick configuration function and delay function.
readme.txt	Description document about how to configure and how to use the firmware example.

### 3. Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals

#### 3.1. Overview of Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals

The description format of firmware functions are shown as below:

**Table 3-1. Peripheral function format of Firmware Library**

<b>Function name</b>	Name of peripheral function
<b>Function prototype</b>	Declaration prototype
<b>Function descriptions</b>	Explain the function how to work
<b>Precondition</b>	Requirements should meet before calling this function
<b>The called functions</b>	Other firmware functions called in this functin
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>Input parameter name</b>	Description
xxxx	Description of input parameters
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
<b>Output parameter name</b>	Description
xxxx	Description of output parameters
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>Return value type</b>	The range of return value

#### 3.2. ADC

The 12-bit ADC is an analog-to-digital converter using the successive approximation method. The ADC registers are listed in chapter [3.2.1](#), the ADC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.2.2](#).

##### 3.2.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

ADC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-2. ADC Registers**

<b>Registers</b>	<b>Descriptions</b>
ADC_STAT	Status register
ADC_CTL0	Control register 0
ADC_CTL1	Control register 1
ADC_SAMPT0	Sample time register 0
ADC_SAMPT1	Sample time register 1
ADC_IOFFx (x=0..3)	Inserted channel data offset register x(x=0..3)
ADC_WDHT	Watchdog high threshold register
ADC_WDLT	Watchdog low threshold register

Registers	Descriptions
ADC_RSQ0	Regular sequence register 0
ADC_RSQ1	Regular sequence register 1
ADC_RSQ2	Regular sequence register 2
ADC_ISQ	Inserted sequence register
ADC_IDATAx	Inserted data register x(x=0..3)
ADC_RDATA	Regular data register
ADC_OVSAMPCTL	Oversample control register

## 3.2.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

ADC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-3. ADC firmware function**

Function name	Function description
adc_deinit	reset ADCx peripheral
adc_mode_config	configure the ADC sync mode
adc_special_function_config	enable or disable ADC special function
adc_data_alignment_config	configure ADC data alignment
adc_enable	enable ADC interface
adc_disable	disable ADC interface
adc_calibration_enable	ADC calibration and reset calibration
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable	enable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable	disable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
adc_resolution_config	configure ADC resolution
adc_oversample_mode_config	configure ADC oversample mode
adc_oversample_mode_enable	enable ADC oversample mode
adc_oversample_mode_disable	disable ADC oversample mode
adc_dma_mode_enable	enable DMA request
adc_dma_mode_disable	disable DMA request
adc_discontinuous_mode_config	configure ADC discontinuous mode
adc_channel_length_config	configure the length of regular channel group or inserted channel group
adc_regular_channel_config	configure ADC regular channel
adc_inserted_channel_config	configure ADC inserted channel
adc_inserted_channel_offset_config	configure ADC inserted channel offset
adc_external_trigger_source_config	configure ADC external trigger source
adc_external_trigger_config	enable ADC external trigger
adc_software_trigger_enable	enable ADC software trigger
adc_regular_data_read	read ADC regular group data register
adc_inserted_data_read	read ADC inserted group data register
adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read	read the last ADC0 and ADC1 conversion result data in sync mode

Function name	Function description
adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable	configure ADC analog watchdog single channel
adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable	configure ADC analog watchdog group channel
adc_watchdog_disable	disable ADC analog watchdog
adc_watchdog_threshold_config	configure ADC analog watchdog threshold
adc_flag_get	get the ADC flag bits
adc_flag_clear	clear the ADC flag bits
adc_regular_software_startconv_flag_get	get the bit state of ADCx software start conversion
adc_inserted_software_startconv_flag_get	get the bit state of ADCx software inserted channel start conversion
adc_interrupt_flag_get	get the ADC interrupt bits
adc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear the ADC flag
adc_interrupt_enable	enable ADC interrupt
adc_interrupt_disable	disable ADC interrupt

## adc\_deinit

The description of adc\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-4. Function adc\_deinit**

Function name	adc_deinit
Function prototype	void adc_deinit(uint32_t adc_periph);
Function descriptions	reset ADCx peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0,1)	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset ADC0 */
adc_deinit(ADC0);
```

## adc\_mode\_config

The description of adc\_mode\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-5. Function `adc_mode_config`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>adc_mode_config</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void adc_mode_config(uint32_t mode);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the ADCs sync mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mode</b>	ADC mode
<code>ADC_MODE_FREE</code>	all the ADC work independently
<code>ADC_DUAL_REGULAR_PARALLEL_INSERTED_PARALLEL</code>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in combined regular parallel + inserted parallel mode
<code>ADC_DUAL_REGULAR_PARALLEL_INSERTED_TRIGGER_ROTATION</code>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in combined regular parallel + trigger rotation mode
<code>ADC_DUAL_INSERTED_PARALLEL_REGULAR_FOLLOWUP_FAST</code>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in combined inserted parallel + follow-up fast mode
<code>ADC_DUAL_INSERTED_PARALLEL_REGULAR_FOLLOWUP_SLOW</code>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in combined inserted parallel + follow-up slow mode
<code>ADC_DUAL_INSERTED_PARALLEL</code>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in inserted parallel mode only
<code>ADC_DUAL_REGULAR_PARALLEL</code>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in regular parallel mode only
<code>ADC_DUAL_REGULAR_FOLLOWUP_FAST</code>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in follow-up fast mode only
<code>ADC_DUAL_REGULAR_FOLLOWUP_SLOW</code>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in follow-up slow mode only
<code>ADC_DUAL_INSERTED_TRIGGER_ROTATION</code>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in trigger rotation mode only
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the ADC sync mode */
adc_mode_config(ADC_MODE_FREE);
```



## adc\_special\_function\_config

The description of adc\_special\_function\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-6. Function adc\_special\_function\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_special_function_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_special_function_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t function, ControlStatus newvalue);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable or disable ADC special function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0,1)	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>function</b>	the function to config
ADC_SCAN_MODE	scan mode select
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_AUTO	inserted channel group convert automatically
ADC_CONTINUOUS_MODE	continuous mode select
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>newvalue</b>	control value
ENABLE	enable function
DISABLE	disable function
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 scan mode */
```

```
adc_special_function_config(ADC0, ADC_SCAN_MODE, ENABLE);
```

## adc\_data\_alignment\_config

The description of adc\_data\_alignment\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-7. Function adc\_data\_alignment\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_data_alignment_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_data_alignment_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t data_alignment);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADCx data alignment
<b>Precondition</b>	-

<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>data_alignment</b>	data alignment select
<i>ADC_DATAALIGN_RIGHT</i>	LSB alignment
<i>ADC_DATAALIGN_LEFT</i>	MSB alignment
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 data alignment */
```

```
adc_data_alignment_config(ADC0, ADC_DATAALIGN_RIGHT);
```

## adc\_enable

The description of adc\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-8. Function adc\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_enable(uint32_t adc_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable ADCx interface
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 */
```

```
adc_enable(ADC0);
```

## adc\_disable

The description of adc\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-9. Function adc\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_disable(uint32_t adc_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable ADCx interface
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 */
adc_disable(ADC0);
```

## adc\_calibration\_enable

The description of adc\_calibration\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-10. Function adc\_calibration\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_calibration_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_calibration_enable(uint32_t adc_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	ADCx calibration and reset calibration
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* ADC0 calibration and reset calibration */
adc_calibration_enable(ADC0);
```

## adc\_tempsensor\_vrefint\_enable

The description of adc\_tempsensor\_vrefint\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-11. Function adc\_tempsensor\_vrefint\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel */
```

```
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable();
```

## adc\_tempsensor\_vrefint\_disable

The description of adc\_tempsensor\_vrefint\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-12. Function adc\_tempsensor\_vrefint\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel */
```

```
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable();
```

## adc\_resolution\_config

The description of adc\_resolution\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-13. Function adc\_resolution\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_resolution_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_resolution_config(uint32_t adc_periph , uint32_t resolution);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC resolution
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>resolution</b>	ADC resolution
<i>ADC_RESOLUTION_12B</i>	12-bit ADC resolution
<i>ADC_RESOLUTION_10B</i>	10-bit ADC resolution
<i>ADC_RESOLUTION_8B</i>	8-bit ADC resolution
<i>ADC_RESOLUTION_6B</i>	6-bit ADC resolution
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 data alignment */
adc_data_alignment_config(ADC0, ADC_DATAALIGN_RIGHT);
```

## adc\_oversample\_mode\_config

The description of adc\_oversample\_mode\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-14. Function adc\_oversample\_mode\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_oversample_mode_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_oversample_mode_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t mode, uint16_t shift, uint8_t ratio);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC oversample mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>mode</b>	ADC oversampling mode
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _ALL_CONVERT</i>	all oversampled conversions for a channel are done consecutively after a trigger
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _ONE_CONVERT</i>	each oversampled conversion for a channel needs a trigger
Input parameter{in}	
<b>shift</b>	ADC oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _SHIFT_NONE</i>	no oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _SHIFT_1B</i>	1-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _SHIFT_2B</i>	2-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _SHIFT_3B</i>	3-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _SHIFT_4B</i>	4-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _SHIFT_5B</i>	5-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _SHIFT_6B</i>	6-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _SHIFT_7B</i>	7-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _SHIFT_8B</i>	8-bit oversampling shift
Input parameter{in}	
<b>ratio</b>	ADC oversampling ratio
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _RATIO_MUL2</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 2
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _RATIO_MUL4</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 4
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _RATIO_MUL8</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 8
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _RATIO_MUL16</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 16
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _RATIO_MUL32</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 32
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING _RATIO_MUL64</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 64

ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL128	oversampling ratio multiple 128
ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL256	oversampling ratio multiple 256
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC1 oversample mode: 16 times sample, 4 bits shift */
```

```
adc_oversample_mode_config(ADC1, ADC_OVERSAMPLING_ALL_CONVERT,
ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_4B, ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL16);
```

## adc\_oversample\_mode\_enable

The description of adc\_oversample\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-15. Function adc\_oversample\_mode\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_oversample_mode_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_oversample_mode_enable(uint32_t adc_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable ADC oversample mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<b>ADCx(x=0,1)</b>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 oversample mode */
```

```
adc_oversample_mode_enable (ADC0);
```

## adc\_oversample\_mode\_disable

The description of adc\_oversample\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-16. Function adc\_oversample\_mode\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_oversample_mode_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_oversample_mode_disable(uint32_t adc_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable ADC oversample mode

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 oversample mode */
adc_oversample_mode_disable (ADC0);
```

## adc\_dma\_mode\_enable

The description of adc\_dma\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-17. Function adc\_dma\_mode\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_dma_mode_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_dma_mode_enable(uint32_t adc_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable ADCx DMA request
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 DMA request */
adc_dma_mode_enable(ADC0);
```

## adc\_dma\_mode\_disable

The description of adc\_dma\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-18. Function adc\_dma\_mode\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_dma_mode_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_dma_mode_disable(uint32_t adc_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable ADCx DMA request



<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 DMA request */
```

```
adc_dma_mode_disable(ADC0);
```

## adc\_discontinuous\_mode\_config

The description of adc\_discontinuous\_mode\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-19. Function adc\_discontinuous\_mode\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_discontinuous_mode_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_discontinuous_mode_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group, uint8_t length);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC discontinuous mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_channel_group</b>	select the channel group
<i>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</i>	regular channel group
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</i>	inserted channel group
<i>ADC_CHANNEL_DISCONTINUOUS_DISABLE</i>	disable discontinuous mode of regular and inserted channel
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>length</b>	number of conversions in discontinuous mode, the number can be 1..8 for regular channel, the number has no effect for inserted channel
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 regular channel group discontinuous mode */  
  
adc_discontinuous_mode_config(ADC0, ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL, 6);
```

## adc\_channel\_length\_config

The description of adc\_channel\_length\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-20. Function adc\_channel\_length\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_channel_length_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_channel_length_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group, uint32_t length);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the length of regular channel group or inserted channel group
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0,1)	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_channel_group</b>	select the channel group
ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL	regular channel group
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL	inserted channel group
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>length</b>	the length of the channel, regular channel 1-16, inserted channel 1-4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the length of ADC0 regular channel */  
  
adc_channel_length_config(ADC0, ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL, 4);
```

## adc\_regular\_channel\_config

The description of adc\_regular\_channel\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-21. Function adc\_regular\_channel\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_regular_channel_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_regular_channel_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t rank, uint8_t adc_channel, uint32_t sample_time);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC regular channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>rank</b>	the regular group sequence rank, this parameter must be between 0 to 15
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_channel</b>	the selected ADC channel
<i>ADC_CHANNEL_x(x=0..17)</i>	ADC Channelx (x=0..17)(x=16 and x=17 are only for ADC0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>sample_time</b>	the sample time value
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_1POINT5</i>	1.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5</i>	7.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_13POINT5</i>	13.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_28POINT5</i>	28.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_41POINT5</i>	41.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_55POINT5</i>	55.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_71POINT5</i>	71.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_239POINT5</i>	239.5 cycles
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 regular channel */
```

```
adc_regular_channel_config(ADC0, 1, ADC_CHANNEL_0, ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5);
```

## **adc\_inserted\_channel\_config**

The description of `adc_inserted_channel_config` is shown as below:

**Table 3-22. Function `adc_inserted_channel_config`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>adc_inserted_channel_config</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void adc_inserted_channel_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t rank, uint8_t adc_channel, uint32_t sample_time);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC inserted channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<code>ADCx(0,1)</code>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>rank</b>	the inserted group sequencer rank, this parameter must be between 0 to 3
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_channel</b>	the selected ADC channel
<code>ADC_CHANNEL_x(x=0..17)</code>	ADC Channelx (x=0..17)(x=16 and x=17 are only for ADC0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>sample_time</b>	the sample time value
<code>ADC_SAMPLETIME_1POINT5</code>	1.5 cycles
<code>ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5</code>	7.5 cycles
<code>ADC_SAMPLETIME_13POINT5</code>	13.5 cycles
<code>ADC_SAMPLETIME_28POINT5</code>	28.5 cycles
<code>ADC_SAMPLETIME_41POINT5</code>	41.5 cycles
<code>ADC_SAMPLETIME_55POINT5</code>	55.5 cycles
<code>ADC_SAMPLETIME_71POINT5</code>	71.5 cycles
<code>ADC_SAMPLETIME_239POINT5</code>	239.5 cycles
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 inserted channel */
```

```
adc_inserted_channel_config(ADC0, 1, ADC_CHANNEL_0, ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5);
```

## adc\_inserted\_channel\_offset\_config

The description of adc\_inserted\_channel\_offset\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-23. Function adc\_inserted\_channel\_offset\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_inserted_channel_offset_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_inserted_channel_offset_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t inserted_channel, uint16_t offset);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC inserted channel offset
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0,1)	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>inserted_channel</b>	insert channel select
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_x(x=0..3)	inserted channel, x=0,1,2,3
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>offset</b>	the offset data, this parameter must be between 0 to 4095
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 inserted channel offset */
```

```
adc_inserted_channel_offset_config(ADC0, ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_0, 100);
```

## adc\_external\_trigger\_source\_config

The description of adc\_external\_trigger\_source\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-24. Function adc\_external\_trigger\_source\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_external_trigger_source_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_external_trigger_source_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group, uint32_t external_trigger_source);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC external trigger source
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0,1)	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>adc_channel_group</b>	select the channel group
<i>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</i>	regular channel group
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</i>	inserted channel group
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>external_trigger_source</b>	regular or inserted group trigger source
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T0_CH0</i>	TIMER0 CH0 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T0_CH1</i>	TIMER0 CH1 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T0_CH2</i>	TIMER0 CH2 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T1_CH1</i>	TIMER1 CH1 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T2_TRGO</i>	TIMER2 TRGO event select for regular channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T3_CH3</i>	TIMER3 CH3 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T7_TRGO</i>	TIMER7 TRGO event select for regular channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_EXTI_11</i>	external interrupt line 11 for regular channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_NONE</i>	software trigger for regular channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_INSERTED_T0_TRGO</i>	TIMER0 TRGO event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_INSERTED_T0_CH3</i>	TIMER0 CH3 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_INSERTED_T1_TRGO</i>	TIMER1 TRGO event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_INSERTED_T1_CH0</i>	TIMER1 CH0 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_INSERTED_T2_CH3</i>	TIMER2 CH3 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_INSERTED_T3_TRGO</i>	TIMER3 TRGO event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_INSERTED_EXTI_15</i>	external interrupt line 15 for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_INSERTED_T7_CH3</i>	TIMER7 CH3 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_INSERTED_NONE</i>	software trigger for inserted channel

<i>SERTE_NONE</i>	
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 regular channel external trigger source */
```

```
adc_external_trigger_source_config(ADC0,ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL,  
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T0_CH0);
```

## adc\_external\_trigger\_config

The description of adc\_external\_trigger\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-25. Function adc\_external\_trigger\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_external_trigger_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_external_trigger_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group, ControlStatus newvalue);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC external trigger
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_channel_group</b>	select the channel group
<i>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</i>	regular channel group
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</i>	inserted channel group
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>newvalue</b>	control value
<i>ENABLE</i>	enable function
<i>DISABLE</i>	disable function
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 inserted channel group external trigger */
```

```
adc_external_trigger_config(ADC0, ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_0, ENABLE);
```

## adc\_software\_trigger\_enable

The description of adc\_software\_trigger\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-26. Function adc\_software\_trigger\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_software_trigger_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_software_trigger_enable(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable ADC software trigger
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_channel_group</b>	select the channel group
<i>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</i>	regular channel group
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</i>	inserted channel group
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 regular channel group software trigger */
adc_software_trigger_enable(ADC0, ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL);
```

## adc\_regular\_data\_read

The description of adc\_regular\_data\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-27. Function adc\_regular\_data\_read**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_regular_data_read
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t adc_regular_data_read(uint32_t adc_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	read ADC regular group data register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-



Return value	
<b>uint16_t</b>	ADC conversion value (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read ADC0 regular group data register */
```

```
uint16_t adc_value = 0;
```

```
adc_value = adc_regular_data_read(ADC0);
```

## adc\_inserted\_data\_read

The description of adc\_inserted\_data\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-28. Function adc\_inserted\_data\_read**

Function name	adc_inserted_data_read
Function prototype	uint16_t adc_inserted_data_read(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t inserted_channel);
Function descriptions	read ADC inserted group data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0,1)	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>inserted_channel</b>	insert channel select
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_x(x=0..3)	inserted Channelx, x=0,1,2,3
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<b>uint16_t</b>	ADC conversion value (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read ADC0 inserted group data register */
```

```
uint16_t adc_value = 0;
```

```
adc_value = adc_inserted_data_read (ADC0, ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_0);
```

## adc\_sync\_mode\_convert\_value\_read

The description of adc\_sync\_mode\_convert\_value\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-29. Function adc\_sync\_mode\_convert\_value\_read**

Function name	adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read
Function prototype	uint32_t adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read(void);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	read the last ADC0 and ADC1 conversion result data in sync mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
uint32_t	ADC conversion value (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read the last ADC0 and ADC1 conversion result data in sync mode */

uint32_t adc_value = 0;

adc_value = adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read ();
```

## adc\_watchdog\_single\_channel\_enable

The description of adc\_watchdog\_single\_channel\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-30. Function adc\_watchdog\_single\_channel\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC analog watchdog single channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0,1)	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
adc_channel	the selected ADC channel
ADC_CHANNEL_x(x=0..17)	ADC Channelx(x=0..17) (x=16 and x=17 are only for ADC0)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 analog watchdog single channel */

adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable(ADC0, ADC_CHANNEL_1);
```

## adc\_watchdog\_group\_channel\_enable

The description of adc\_watchdog\_group\_channel\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-31. Function adc\_watchdog\_group\_channel\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure ADC analog watchdog group channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_channel_group</b>	the channel group use analog watchdog
<i>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</i>	regular channel group
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</i>	inserted channel group
<i>ADC_REGULAR_INSERTED_CHANNEL</i>	both regular and inserted group
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 analog watchdog group channel */
```

```
adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable(ADC0, ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL);
```

## adc\_watchdog\_disable

The description of adc\_watchdog\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-32. Function adc\_watchdog\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_watchdog_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_watchdog_disable(uint32_t adc_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable ADC analog watchdog
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 analog watchdog */
```

```
adc_watchdog_disable(ADC0);
```

## adc\_watchdog\_threshold\_config

The description of adc\_watchdog\_threshold\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-33. Function adc\_watchdog\_threshold\_config**

Function name	adc_watchdog_threshold_config
Function prototype	void adc_watchdog_threshold_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint16_t low_threshold, uint16_t high_threshold);
Function descriptions	configure ADC analog watchdog threshold
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0,1)	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
low_threshold	analog watchdog low threshold, 0..4095
Input parameter{in}	
high_threshold	analog watchdog high threshold, 0..4095
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 analog watchdog threshold */
```

```
adc_watchdog_threshold_config(ADC0, 0x0400, 0x0A00);
```

## adc\_flag\_get

The description of adc\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-34. Function adc\_flag\_get**

Function name	adc_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus adc_flag_get(uint32_t adc_periph , uint32_t adc_flag);
Function descriptions	get the ADC flag bits

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_flag</b>	the adc flag bits
<i>ADC_FLAG_WDE</i>	analog watchdog event flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_EOC</i>	end of group conversion flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_STIC</i>	start flag of inserted channel group
<i>ADC_FLAG_STRC</i>	start flag of regular channel group
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the ADC0 analog watchdog flag bits*/
```

```
FlagStatus flag_value;
```

```
flag_value = adc_flag_get(ADC0, ADC_FLAG_WDE);
```

## adc\_flag\_clear

The description of adc\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-35. Function adc\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_flag_clear(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t adc_flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear the ADC flag bits
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_flag</b>	the adc flag bits
<i>ADC_FLAG_WDE</i>	analog watchdog event flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_EOC</i>	end of group conversion flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_STIC</i>	start flag of inserted channel group
<i>ADC_FLAG_STRC</i>	start flag of regular channel group

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the ADC0 analog watchdog flag bits*/
```

```
adc_flag_clear(ADC0, ADC_FLAG_WDE);
```

## adc\_regular\_software\_startconv\_flag\_get

The description of adc\_regular\_software\_startconv\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-36. Function adc\_regular\_software\_startconv\_flag\_get**

Function name	adc_regular_software_startconv_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus adc_regular_software_startconv_flag_get(uint32_t adc_periph);
Function descriptions	get the bit state of ADCx software regular channel start conversion
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0,1)	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the bit state of ADC0 software regular channel start conversion */
```

```
FlagStatus flag_value;
```

```
flag_value = adc_regular_software_startconv_flag_get(ADC0);
```

## adc\_inserted\_software\_startconv\_flag\_get

The description of adc\_inserted\_software\_startconv\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-37. Function adc\_inserted\_software\_startconv\_flag\_get**

Function name	adc_inserted_software_startconv_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus adc_inserted_software_startconv_flag_get(uint32_t adc_periph);
Function descriptions	get the bit state of ADCx software inserted channel start conversion
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the bit state of ADC0 software inserted channel start conversion */
```

```
FlagStatus flag_value;
```

```
flag_value = adc_inserted_software_startconv_flag_get(ADC0);
```

## adc\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of adc\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-38. Function adc\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus adc_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t adc_interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get the ADC interrupt bits
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_interrupt</b>	the adc interrupt bits
<i>ADC_INT_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the ADC0 analog watchdog interrupt bits*/
```

```
FlagStatus flag_value;
```

```
flag_value = adc_interrupt_flag_get(ADC0, ADC_INT_WDE);
```

## adc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of adc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-39. Function adc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t adc_interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear the ADC interrupt bits
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_interrupt</b>	the adc interrupt bits
<i>ADC_INT_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the ADC0 analog watchdog interrupt bits*/
adc_interrupt_flag_clear(ADC0, ADC_INT_WDE);
```

## adc\_interrupt\_enable

The description of adc\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-40. Function adc\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	adc_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void adc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t adc_interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable ADC interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_interrupt</b>	the adc interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt



<i>ADC_INT_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 analog watchdog interrupt */
adc_interrupt_enable(ADC0, ADC_INT_WDE);
```

## adc\_interrupt\_disable

The description of `adc_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-41. Function `adc_interrupt_disable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>adc_interrupt_disable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void adc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t adc_periph , uint32_t adc_interrupt);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	Disable ADC interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_periph</b>	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_interrupt</b>	the adc interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 interrupt */
adc_interrupt_disable(ADC0, ADC_INT_WDE);
```

## 3.3. BKP

The Backup registers are located in the Backup domain that remains powered-on by  $V_{BAT}$  even if  $V_{DD}$  power is shut down, they are forty two 16-bit (84 bytes) registers for data protection of user application data, and the wake-up action from Standby mode or system reset do not

affect these registers. The BKP registers are listed in chapter [3.3.1](#), the BKP firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.3.2](#).

## 3.3.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

BKP registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-42. BKP Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
BKP_DATAx (x = 0..41)	Backup data register
BKP_OCTL	RTC signal output control register
BKP_TPCTL	Tamper pin control register
BKP_TPCS	Tamper control and status register

## 3.3.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

BKP firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-43. BKP firmware function**

Function name	Function description
bkp_deinit	reset data registers
bkp_data_write	write data register
bkp_data_read	read data register
bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable	enable RTC clock calibration output
bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable	disable RTC clock calibration output
bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable	enable RTC alarm or second signal output
bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable	disable RTC alarm or second signal output
bkp_rtc_output_select	select RTC output, the RTC output can be select as alarm pulse or second pulse
bkp_rtc_clock_output_select	select RTC clock output
bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction_select	select RTC clock calibration direction
bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set	set RTC clock calibration value
bkp_tamper_detection_enable	enable tamper detection
bkp_tamper_detection_disable	disable tamper detection
bkp_tamper_active_level_set	set tamper pin active level
bkp_interrupt_enable	enable tamper interrupt
bkp_interrupt_disable	disable tamper interrupt
bkp_flag_get	get bkp flag state
bkp_flag_clear	clear bkp flag state
bkp_interrupt_flag_get	get bkp interrupt flag state
bkp_interrupt_flag_clear	clear bkp interrupt flag state

## bkp\_deinit

The description of bkp\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-44. Function bkp\_deinit**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_deinit(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reset data registers
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_bkp_reset_enable / rcu_bkp_reset_disable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset BKP registers */
bkp_deinit();
```

## bkp\_data\_write

The description of bkp\_data\_write is shown as below:

**Table 3-45. Function bkp\_data\_write**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_data_write
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_data_write(bkp_data_register_enum register_number, uint16_t data);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	write data register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>register_number</b>	refer to bkp_data_register_enum
<i>BKP_DATA_x(x = 0..41)</i>	bkp data register number x
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>data</b>	the data to be write in BKP data register
<i>0-0xffff</i>	data value
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write BKP data register */

bkp_data_write (BKP_DATA_0, 0x1226);
```

## bkp\_data\_read

The description of bkp\_data\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-46. Function bkp\_data\_read**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_data_read
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t bkp_data_read (bkp_data_register_enum register_number);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	read data register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>register_number</b>	refer to bkp_data_register_enum
<i>BKP_DATA_x(x = 0..41)</i>	bkp data register number x
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint16_t</b>	0-0xffff

Example:

```
/* read BKP data register */

uint16_t data;

data = bkp_data_read(BKP_DATA_0);
```

## bkp\_rtc\_calibration\_output\_enable

The description of bkp\_rtc\_calibration\_output\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-47. Function bkp\_rtc\_calibration\_output\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable RTC clock calibration output
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* enable RTC clock calibration output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable();
```

## bkp\_rtc\_calibration\_output\_disable

The description of bkp\_rtc\_calibration\_output\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-48. Function bkp\_rtc\_calibration\_output\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable RTC clock calibration output
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable RTC clock calibration output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable();
```

## bkp\_rtc\_signal\_output\_enable

The description of bkp\_rtc\_signal\_output\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-49. Function bkp\_rtc\_signal\_output\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable RTC alarm or second signal output
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable RTC alarm or second signal output */

bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable();
```

## **bkp\_rtc\_signal\_output\_disable**

The description of bkp\_rtc\_signal\_output\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-50. Function bkp\_rtc\_signal\_output\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable RTC alarm or second signal output
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable RTC alarm or second signal output */

bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable();
```

## **bkp\_rtc\_output\_select**

The description of bkp\_rtc\_output\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-51. Function bkp\_rtc\_output\_select**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_rtc_output_select
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_rtc_output_select (uint16_t outputsel);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	select RTC output, the RTC output can be select as alarm pulse or second pulse
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>outputsel</b>	RTC output selection
<i>RTC_OUTPUT_ALARM_PULSE</i>	RTC alarm pulse is selected as the RTC output
<i>RTC_OUTPUT_SECONDS_PULSE</i>	RTC second pulse is selected as the RTC output
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select RTC output alarm signal output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_output_select(RTC_OUTPUT_ALARM_PULSE);
```

## bkp\_rtc\_clock\_output\_select

The description of bkp\_rtc\_clock\_output\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-52. Function bkp\_rtc\_clock\_output\_select**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_rtc_clock_output_select
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_rtc_clock_output_select(uint16_t clocksel);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	select RTC clock output, the RTC clock output can be select as divided 64 or no division
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>clocksel</b>	RTC clock output selection
<i>RTC_CLOCK_DIV_64</i>	RTC clock divided 64 is selected as the RTC clock output
<i>RTC_CLOCK_DIV_1</i>	RTC clock is selected as the RTC clock output
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select RTC clock divided 64 to output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_clock_output_select(RTC_CLOCK_DIV_64);
```

## bkp\_rtc\_clock\_calibration\_direction\_select

The description of bkp\_rtc\_clock\_calibration\_direction\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-53. Function bkp\_rtc\_clock\_calibration\_direction\_select**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction_select
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction_select(uint16_t direction);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	select RTC clock calibration direction, the RTC clock calibration direction can be select as slowed down or speed up
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>direction</b>	RTC clock calibration direction
<i>RTC_CLOCK_SLOW_DOWN</i>	RTC clock slow down
<i>RTC_CLOCK_SPEED_UP</i>	RTC clock speed up
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set RTC clock slowed down */
```

```
bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction_select(RTC_CLOCK_SLOWED_DOWN);
```

## bkp\_rtc\_calibration\_value\_set

The description of bkp\_rtc\_calibration\_value\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-54. Function bkp\_rtc\_calibration\_value\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set(uint8_t value);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set RTC clock calibration value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>value</b>	RTC clock calibration value
<i>0x00 - 0x7F</i>	value
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set RTC clock calibration value */
```

```
bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set(0x7f);
```

## bkp\_tamper\_detection\_enable

The description of bkp\_tamper\_detection\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-55. Function bkp\_tamper\_detection\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_tamper_detection_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_tamper_detection_enable (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable tamper detection



<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable tamper pin detection */
```

```
bkp_tamper_detection_enable();
```

## bkp\_tamper\_detection\_disable

The description of bkp\_tamper\_detection\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-56. Function bkp\_tamper\_detection\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_tamper_detection_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_tamper_detection_disable (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable tamper detection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable tamper pin detection */
```

```
bkp_tamper_detection_disable();
```

## bkp\_tamper\_active\_level\_set

The description of bkp\_tamper\_active\_level\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-57. Function bkp\_tamper\_active\_level\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_tamper_active_level_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_tamper_active_level_set (uint16_t level);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set tamper pin active level
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
<b>level</b>	tamper pin active level
<i>TAMPER_PIN_ACTIVE_HIGH</i>	the tamper pin is active high
<i>TAMPER_PIN_ACTIVE_LOW</i>	the tamper pin is active low
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set tamper pin active level high */
```

```
bkp_tamper_active_level_set(TAMPER_PIN_ACTIVE_HIGH);
```

## bkp\_interrupt\_enable

The description of bkp\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-58. Function bkp\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_interrupt_enable (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable tamper interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable tamper pin interrupt */
```

```
bkp_interrupt_enable();
```

## bkp\_interrupt\_disable

The description of bkp\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-59. Function bkp\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_interrupt_disable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable tamper interrupt

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable tamper pin interrupt */
```

```
bkp_interrupt_disable ();
```

## bkp\_flag\_get

The description of bkp\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-60. Function bkp\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus bkp_flag_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get bkp flag state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get BKP flag state */
```

```
FlagStatus status;
```

```
status = bkp_flag_get();
```

## bkp\_flag\_clear

The description of bkp\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-61. Function bkp\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_flag_clear(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear bkp flag state

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear BKP flag state */
```

```
bkp_flag_clear();
```

## **bkp\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

The description of bkp\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-62. Function bkp\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus bkp_interrupt_flag_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get bkp interrupt flag state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get BKP interrupt flag state */
```

```
bkp_interrupt_flag_get();
```

## **bkp\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

The description of bkp\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-63. Function bkp\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	bkp_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void bkp_interrupt_flag_clear(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear bkp interrupt flag state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear BKP interrupt flag state */
```

```
bkp_interrupt_flag_clear();
```

## 3.4. CAN

CAN bus (for Controller Area Network) is a bus standard designed to allow microcontrollers and devices to communicate with each other without a host computer. The CAN registers are listed in chapter [3.4.1](#), the CAN firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.4.2](#).

### 3.4.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CAN registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-64. CAN Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
CAN_CTL	Control register
CAN_STAT	Status register
CAN_TSTAT	Transmit status register
CAN_RFIFO0	Receive message FIFO0 register
CAN_RFIFO1	Receive message FIFO1 register
CAN_INTEN	Interrupt enable register
CAN_ERR	Error register
CAN_BT	Bit timing register
CAN_FDCTL	FD control register
CAN_FDSTAT	FD status register
CAN_FDTDC	FD transmitter delay compensation register
CAN_DBT	Date Bit timing register
CAN_TMIx	Transmit mailbox identifier register
CAN_TMPx	Transmit mailbox property register
CAN_TMDATA0x	Transmit mailbox data0 register
CAN_TMDATA1x	Transmit mailbox data1 register
CAN_RFIFOMIx	Receive FIFO mailbox identifier register
CAN_RFIFOMPx	Receive FIFO mailbox property register
CAN_RFIFOMDAT	Receive FIFO mailbox data0 register

Registers	Descriptions
A0x	
CAN_RFIFOMDAT A1x	Receive FIFO mailbox data1 register
CAN_FCTL	Filter control register
CAN_FMCFG	Filter mode configuration register
CAN_FSCFG	Filter scale configuration register
CAN_FAFIFO	Filter associated FIFO registe
CAN_FW	Filter working register
CAN_FxDATAy	Filter x data y register

## 3.4.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CAN firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-65. CAN firmware function**

Function name	Function description
can_deinit	deinitialize CAN
can_struct_para_init	initialize CAN parameter struct with a default value
can_init	initialize CAN
can_fd_init	initialize CAN FD function
can_filter_init	initialize CAN filter
can_filter_mask_mode_init	CAN filter mask mode initialization
can_monitor_mode_set	CAN communication mode configure
can_fd_function_enable	CAN FD frame function enable
can_fd_function_disable	CAN FD frame function disable
can1_filter_start_bank	set can1 fliter start bank number
can_debug_freeze_enable	CAN debug freeze enable
can_debug_freeze_disable	CAN debug freeze disable
can_time_trigger_mode_enable	CAN time trigggle mode enable
can_time_trigger_mode_disable	CAN time trigggle mode disable
can_message_transmit	transmit CAN message
can_transmit_states	get CAN transmit state
can_transmission_stop	stop CAN transmission
can_message_receive	CAN receive message
can_fifo_release	CAN release fifo
can_receive_message_length_get	CAN receive message length
can_working_mode_set	CAN working mode
can_wakeup	CAN wakeup from sleep mode
can_error_get	CAN get error
can_receive_error_number_get	get CAN receive error number
can_transmit_error_number_get	get CAN transmit error number
can_interrupt_enable	CAN interrupt enable

Function name	Function description
can_interrupt_disable	CAN interrupt disable
can_flag_get	CAN get flag state
can_flag_clear	CAN clear flag state
can_interrupt_flag_get	CAN get interrupt flag state
can_interrupt_flag_clear	CAN clear interrupt flag state

## Structure can\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-66. Structure can\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
working_mode	CAN working mode
resync_jump_width	CAN resynchronization jump width
time_segment_1	time segment 1
time_segment_2	time segment 2
time_triggered	time triggered communication mode
auto_bus_off_recovery	automatic bus-off recovery
auto_wake_up	automatic wake-up mode
auto_retrans	automatic retransmission mode
rec_fifo_overwrite	receive FIFO overwrite mode
trans_fifo_order	transmit FIFO order
prescaler	baudrate prescaler

## Structure can\_transmit\_message\_struct

**Table 3-67. Structure can\_transmit\_message\_struct**

Member name	Function description
tx_sfid	standard format frame identifier
tx_efid	extended format frame identifier
tx_ff	format of frame, standard or extended format
tx_ft	type of frame, data or remote
tx_dlen	data length
tx_data[64]	transmit data
fd_flag	CAN FD frame flag
fd_brs	bit rate of data switch
fd_esi	error status indicator

## Structure can\_receive\_message\_struct

**Table 3-68. Structure can\_receive\_message\_struct**

Member name	Function description
rx_sfid	standard format frame identifier
rx_efid	extended format frame identifier

Member name	Function description
rx_ff	format of frame, standard or extended format
rx_ft	type of frame, data or remote
rx_dlen	data length
rx_data[8]	receive data
rx_fi	filtering index
fd_flag	CAN FD frame flag
fd_brs	bit rate of data switch
fd_esi	error status indicator

## Structure can\_filter\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-69. Structure can\_filter\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
filter_list_high	filter list number high bits
filter_list_low	filter list number low bits
filter_mask_high	filter mask number high bits
filter_mask_low	filter mask number low bits
filter_fifo_number	receive FIFO associated with the filter
filter_number	filter number
filter_mode	filter mode, list or mask
filter_bits	filter scale
filter_enable	filter work or not

## Structure can\_fd\_tdc\_struct

**Table 3-70. Structure can\_fd\_tdc\_struct**

Member name	Function description
tdc_mode	transmitter delay compensation mode
tdc_filter	transmitter delay compensation filter
tdc_offset	transmitter delay compensation offset

## Structure can\_fdframe\_struct

**Table 3-71. Structure can\_fdframe\_struct**

Member name	Function description
fd_frame	FD operation function
excp_event_detect	protocol exception event detection function
delay_compensation	transmitter delay compensation mode
p_delay_compensation	pointer to the struct of the transmitter delay compensation, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-70. Structure can_fd_tdc_struct</a>
iso_bosch	ISO/Bosch mode choice
esi_mode	error state indicator mode
data_resync_jump_	CAN resynchronization jump width



Member name	Function description
width	
data_time_segment _1	time segment 1
data_time_segment _2	time segment 2
data_prescaler	baudrate prescaler

## can\_deinit

The description of can\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-72. Function can\_deinit**

<b>Function name</b>	can_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_deinit(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	deinitialize CAN
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_periph_reset_enable/ rcu_periph_reset_disable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-
<b>Function name</b>	can_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_deinit(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	deinitialize CAN
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_periph_reset_enable/ rcu_periph_reset_disable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 deinitialize */
can_deinit(CAN0);
```

## can\_struct\_para\_init

The description of can\_struct\_para\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-73. Function can\_struct\_para\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	can_struct_para_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_struct_para_init(can_struct_type_enum type, void* p_struct)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize CAN parameter struct with a default value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>type</b>	CAN peripheral
CAN_INIT_STRUCT	CAN initialize parameters struct
CAN_FILTER_STRUCT	CAN filter parameters struct
CAN_FD_FRAME_STRUCT	CAN initialize FD frame parameters struct
CAN_TX_MESSAGE_STRUCT	CAN transmit message struct
CAN_RX_MESSAGE_STRUCT	CAN receive message struct
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
<b>p_struct</b>	the struct pointer that needs initialize
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* Initialize CAN parameter struct */
can_parameter_struct can_init;
can_struct_para_init (CAN_INIT_STRUCT, &can_init);
```

## can\_init

The description of can\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-74. Function can\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	can_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus can_init(uint32_t can_periph, can_parameter_struct* can_parameter_init);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize CAN
<b>Precondition</b>	can_struct_para_init()
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_parameter_init</b>	CAN parameter initialization stuct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-66. Structure <i>can_parameter</i> struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	SUCCESS / ERROR
<b>Function name</b>	can_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus can_init(uint32_t can_periph, can_parameter_struct* can_parameter_init);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize CAN
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_parameter_init</b>	CAN parameter initialization stuct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-66. Structure <i>can_parameter</i> struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	SUCCESS / ERROR

Example:

```
/* CAN0 initialize */
can_parameter_struct can_parameter_init;
can_init (CAN0, &can_parameter_init);
```

### can\_fd\_init

The description of can\_fd\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-75. Function can\_fd\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	can_fd_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus can_fd_init(uint32_t can_periph, can_fdframe_struct* can_fdframe_init);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize CAN FD function
<b>Precondition</b>	can_struct_para_init()

<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<b>CANx(x=0,1)</b>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_fdframe_init</b>	parameters for CAN FD initialization, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-71. Structure can_fdframe_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	SUCCESS / ERROR

Example:

```
/* CAN0 FD initialize */
```

```
can_fdframe_struct fd_init_para;
```

```
can_fd_init(CAN0, &fd_init_para);
```

## can\_filter\_init

The description of can\_filter\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-76. Function can\_filter\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	can_filter_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_filter_init(can_filter_parameter_struct* can_filter_parameter_init);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize CAN filter
<b>Precondition</b>	can_struct_para_init()
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_filter_parameter_init</b>	CAN filter initialization struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-69. Structure can_filter_parameter_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-
<b>Function name</b>	can_filter_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_filter_init(can_filter_parameter_struct* can_filter_parameter_init);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize CAN filter
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_filter_parameter_init</b>	CAN filter initialization struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-69. Structure can_filter_parameter_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize CAN filter */
```

```
can_filter_init(&can_filter);
```

## can\_filter\_mask\_mode\_init

The description of can\_filter\_mask\_mode\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-77. Function can\_filter\_mask\_mode\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	can_filter_mask_mode_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_filter_mask_mode_init(uint32_t id, uint32_t mask, can_format_fifo_enum format_fifo, uint16_t filter_number)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	CAN filter mask mode initialization
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	can_filter_init()
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>id</b>	value range (0x00000000 - 0xFFFFFFFF)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mask</b>	value range (0x00000000 - 0xFFFFFFFF)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>format_fifo</b>	format and fifo states, only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
CAN_STANDARD_FIF00	standard format and store to FIFO0
CAN_STANDARD_FIF01	standard format and store to FIFO1
CAN_EXTENDED_FIF00	extended format and store to FIFO0
CAN_EXTENDED_FIF01	extended format and store to FIFO1
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>filter_number</b>	filter sequence number, value range(0x00 - 0x1C)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN filter mask mode initialization */
```

```
can_filter_mask_mode_init(0x11, 0x11, CAN_STANDARD_FIFO0, 0);
```

## can\_monitor\_mode\_set

The description of can\_monitor\_mode\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-78. Function can\_monitor\_mode\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	can_monitor_mode_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus can_monitor_mode_set(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t mode)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	CAN communication mode configure
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mode</b>	communication mode, only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>CAN_NORMAL_MODE</i>	normal mode
<i>CAN_LOOPBACK_MODE</i>	loopback mode
<i>CAN_SILENT_MODE</i>	silent mode
<i>CAN_SILENT_LOOPBACK_MODE</i>	silent loopback mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	SUCCESS / ERROR

Example:

```
/* CAN communication mode configure */
```

```
can_monitor_mode_set(CAN0, CAN_NORMAL_MODE);
```

## can\_fd\_function\_enable

The description of can\_fd\_function\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-79. Function can\_fd\_function\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	can_fd_function_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_fd_function_enable(uint32_t can_periph)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	CAN FD frame function enable
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 FD frame function enable */
```

```
can_fd_function_enable(CAN0);
```

## can\_fd\_function\_disable

The description of can\_fd\_function\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-80. Function can\_fd\_function\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	can_fd_function_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_fd_function_disable(uint32_t can_periph)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	CAN FD frame function disable
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 FD frame function disable */
```

```
can_fd_function_disable(CAN0);
```

## can1\_filter\_start\_bank

The description of can1\_filter\_start\_bank is shown as below:

**Table 3-81. Function can1\_filter\_start\_bank**

<b>Function name</b>	can1_filter_start_bank
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can1_filter_start_bank(uint8_t start_bank);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set CAN1 filter start bank number
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>start_bank</b>	CAN1 start bank number
1..27	start number
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set CAN1 fliter start bank number 15 */
```

```
can1_filter_start_bank (15);
```

## can\_debug\_freeze\_enable

The description of can\_debug\_freeze\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-82. Function can\_debug\_freeze\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	can_debug_freeze_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_debug_freeze_enable(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable CAN debug freeze
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	dbg_periph_enable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-
<b>Function name</b>	can_debug_freeze_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_debug_freeze_enable(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable CAN debug freeze
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	dbg_periph_enable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CAN0 debug freeze */
```



can\_debug\_freeze\_enable (CAN0);

## can\_debug\_freeze\_disable

The description of can\_debug\_freeze\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-83. Function can\_debug\_freeze\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	can_debug_freeze_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_debug_freeze_disable(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable CAN debug freeze
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	dbg_periph_disable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-
<b>Function name</b>	can_debug_freeze_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_debug_freeze_disable(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable CAN debug freeze
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	dbg_periph_disable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CAN0 debug freeze */
```

```
can_debug_freeze_disable (CAN0);
```

## can\_time\_trigger\_mode\_enable

The description of can\_time\_trigger\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-84. Function can\_time\_trigger\_mode\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	can_time_trigger_mode_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_time_trigger_mode_enable(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable CAN time trigger mode

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-
<b>Function name</b>	can_time_trigger_mode_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_time_trigger_mode_enable(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable CAN time trigger mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CAN0 time trigger mode */
```

```
can_time_trigger_mode_enable (CAN0);
```

## can\_time\_trigger\_mode\_disable

The description of can\_time\_trigger\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-85. Function can\_time\_trigger\_mode\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	can_time_trigger_mode_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_time_trigger_mode_disable(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable CAN time trigger mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

<b>Function name</b>	can_time_trigger_mode_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_time_trigger_mode_disable(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable CAN time trigger mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CAN0 time trigger mode */
```

```
can_time_trigger_mode_disable (CAN0);
```

## can\_message\_transmit

The description of can\_message\_transmit is shown as below:

**Table 3-86. Function can\_message\_transmit**

<b>Function name</b>	can_message_transmit
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t can_message_transmit(uint32_t can_periph, can_transmit_message_struct* transmit_message);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	transmit CAN message
<b>Precondition</b>	can_struct_para_init()
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>transmit_message</b>	CAN transmit message struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-67. Structure can_transmit_message_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint8_t</b>	0x00-0x03
<b>Function name</b>	can_message_transmit
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t can_message_transmit(uint32_t can_periph, can_transmit_message_struct* transmit_message);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	transmit CAN message

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>transmit_message</b>	CAN transmit message struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-67. Structure <i>can_transmit_message</i> struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint8_t</b>	0x00-0x03

Example:

```
/* CAN0 transmit message and return the mailbox number */
```

```
uint8_t transmit_mailbox = 0;
```

```
transmit_mailbox = can_message_transmit(CAN0, &transmit_message);
```

## can\_transmit\_states

The description of can\_transmit\_states is shown as below:

**Table 3-87. Function can\_transmit\_states**

<b>Function name</b>	can_transmit_states
<b>Function prototype</b>	can_transmit_state_enum can_transmit_states(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t mailbox_number);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN transmit state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mailbox_number</b>	Mailbox number
<i>CAN_MAILBOXx</i>	CAN_MAILBOXx(x=0,1,2)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>can_transmit_state_enum</b>	0..4
<b>Function name</b>	can_transmit_states
<b>Function prototype</b>	can_transmit_state_enum can_transmit_states(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t

	mailbox_number);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN transmit state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mailbox_number</b>	Mailbox number
<i>CAN_MAILBOXx</i>	CAN_MAILBOXx(x=0,1,2)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>can_transmit_state_e num</b>	0..4

Example:

```
/* CAN0 mailbox0 transmit state */
```

```
uint8_t transmit_state = 0;
```

```
transmit_state = can_transmit_states (CAN0, CAN_MAILBOX0);
```

## can\_transmission\_stop

The description of can\_transmission\_stop is shown as below:

**Table 3-88. Function can\_transmission\_stop**

<b>Function name</b>	can_transmission_stop
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_transmission_stop(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t mailbox_number);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	stop CAN transmission
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mailbox_number</b>	Mailbox number
<i>CAN_MAILBOXx</i>	CAN_MAILBOXx(x=0,1,2)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-
<b>Function name</b>	can_transmission_stop
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_transmission_stop(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t mailbox_number);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	stop CAN transmission
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mailbox_number</b>	Mailbox number
<i>CAN_MAILBOXx</i>	CAN_MAILBOXx(x=0,1,2)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* stop CAN0 mailbox0 transmission */
can_transmission_stop (CAN0, CAN_MAILBOX0);
```

## can\_message\_receive

The description of can\_message\_receive is shown as below:

**Table 3-89. Function can\_message\_receive**

<b>Function name</b>	can_message_receive
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_message_receive(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number, can_receive_message_struct* receive_message);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	CAN receive message
<b>Precondition</b>	can_struct_para_init()
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>fifo_number</b>	Fifo number
<i>CAN_FIFOx</i>	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>receive_message</b>	CAN message receive struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-68. Structure can_receive_message_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-
<b>Function name</b>	can_message_receive

<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_message_receive(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number, can_receive_message_struct* receive_message);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	CAN receive message
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>fifo_number</b>	Fifo number
<i>CAN_FIFOx</i>	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>receive_message</b>	CAN message receive struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-68. Structure can_receive_message_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 FIFO0 receive message */
```

```
can_message_receive(CAN0, CAN_FIFO0, &receive_message);
```

## can\_fifo\_release

The description of can\_fifo\_release is shown as below:

**Table 3-90. Function can\_fifo\_release**

<b>Function name</b>	can_fifo_release
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_fifo_release(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	release FIFO0
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>fifo_number</b>	Fifo number
<i>CAN_FIFOx</i>	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

<b>Function name</b>	can_fifo_release
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_fifo_release(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	release FIFO0
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>fifo_number</b>	Fifo number
<i>CAN_FIFOx</i>	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 release FIFO0 */
```

```
can_fifo_release (CAN0, CAN_FIFO0);
```

## can\_receive\_message\_length\_get

The description of can\_receive\_message\_length\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-91. Function can\_receive\_message\_length\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	can_receive_message_length_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t can_receive_message_length_get(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	CAN receive message length
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>fifo_number</b>	Fifo number
<i>CAN_FIFOx</i>	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint8_t</b>	0..3
<b>Function name</b>	can_receive_message_length_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t can_receive_message_length_get(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t



	fifo_number);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	CAN receive message length
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>fifo_number</b>	Fifo number
<i>CAN_FIFOx</i>	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint8_t</b>	0..3

Example:

```
/* CAN0 FIFO0 receive message length */
```

```
uint8_t frame_number = 0;
```

```
frame_number = can_receive_message_length_get (CAN0, CAN_FIFO0);
```

## can\_working\_mode\_set

The description of can\_working\_mode\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-92. Function can\_working\_mode\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	can_working_mode_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus can_working_mode_set(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t working_mode);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set CAN working mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_working_mode</b>	Mode select
<i>CAN_MODE_INITIALIZE</i>	Initialize mode
<i>CAN_MODE_NORMAL</i>	Normal mode
<i>CAN_MODE_SLEEP</i>	Sleep mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

<b>ErrStatus</b>	SUCCESS / ERROR
------------------	-----------------

Example:

```
/* set CAN0 working at initialize mode */
```

```
can_working_mode_set (CAN0, CAN_MODE_INITIALIZE);
```

## can\_wakeup

The description of can\_wakeup is shown as below:

**Table 3-93. Function can\_wakeup**

<b>Function name</b>	can_wakeup
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus can_wakeup(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	wake up CAN
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	SUCCESS / ERROR
<b>Function name</b>	can_wakeup
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus can_wakeup(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	wake up CAN
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	SUCCESS / ERROR

Example:

```
/* wake up CAN0 */
```

```
can_wakeup (CAN0);
```

## can\_error\_get

The description of can\_error\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-94. Function can\_error\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	can_error_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	can_error_enum can_error_get(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN error type
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>can_error_enum</b>	0..7
<b>Function name</b>	can_error_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	can_error_enum can_error_get(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN error type
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>can_error_enum</b>	0..7

Example:

```
/* get CAN0 error type */
can_error_get (CAN0);
```

## can\_receive\_error\_number\_get

The description of can\_receive\_error\_number\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-95. Function can\_receive\_error\_number\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	can_receive_error_number_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t can_receive_error_number_get(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN receive error number
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..255
<b>Function name</b>	can_receive_error_number_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t can_receive_error_number_get(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN receive error number
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..255

Example:

```
/* get CAN0 receive error number */
can_receive_error_number_get (CAN0);
```

## can\_transmit\_error\_number\_get it

The description of can\_transmit\_error\_number\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-96. Function can\_transmit\_error\_number\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	can_transmit_error_number_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t can_transmit_error_number_get(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN transmit error number
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..255
<b>Function name</b>	can_transmit_error_number_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t can_transmit_error_number_get(uint32_t can_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN transmit error number
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<b>uint8_t</b>	0..255

Example:

```
/* get CAN0 transmit error number */
```

```
can_transmit_error_number_get (CAN0);
```

## can\_interrupt\_enable

The description of can\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-97. Function can\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	can_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_interrupt_enable(uint32_t can_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable CAN interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>interrupt</b>	Interrupt type
<i>CAN_INT_TME</i>	transmit mailbox empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFNE0</i>	receive FIFO0 not empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFF0</i>	receive FIFO0 full interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFO0</i>	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFNE1</i>	receive FIFO1 not empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFF1</i>	receive FIFO1 full interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFO1</i>	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_WERR</i>	warning error interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_PERR</i>	passive error interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_BO</i>	bus-off interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_ERRN</i>	error number interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_WU</i>	wakeup interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_SLPW</i>	sleep working interrupt enable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-
<b>Function name</b>	can_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_interrupt_enable(uint32_t can_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable CAN interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>interrupt</b>	Interrupt type
CAN_INT_TME	transmit mailbox empty interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFNE0	receive FIFO0 not empty interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFF0	receive FIFO0 full interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFO0	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFNE1	receive FIFO1 not empty interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFF1	receive FIFO1 full interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFO1	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt enable
CAN_INT_WERR	warning error interrupt enable
CAN_INT_PERR	passive error interrupt enable
CAN_INT_BO	bus-off interrupt enable
CAN_INT_ERRN	error number interrupt enable
CAN_INT_ERR	error interrupt enable
CAN_INT_WU	wakeup interrupt enable
CAN_INT_SLPW	sleep working interrupt enable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 transmit mailbox empty interrupt enable */
```

```
can_interrupt_enable (CAN0, CAN_INT_TME);
```

## can\_interrupt\_disable

The description of can\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-98. Function can\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	can_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_interrupt_disable(uint32_t can_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable CAN interrupt

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	Interrupt type
<i>CAN_INT_TME</i>	transmit mailbox empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFNE0</i>	receive FIFO0 not empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFF0</i>	receive FIFO0 full interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFO0</i>	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFNE1</i>	receive FIFO1 not empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFF1</i>	receive FIFO1 full interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFO1</i>	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_WERR</i>	warning error interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_PERR</i>	passive error interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_BO</i>	bus-off interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_ERRN</i>	error number interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_WU</i>	wakeup interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_SLPW</i>	sleep working interrupt enable
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 transmit mailbox empty interrupt disable */
```

```
can_interrupt_disable (CAN0, CAN_INT_TME);
```

## can\_flag\_get

The description of can\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-99. Function can\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	can_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus can_flag_get(uint32_t can_periph, can_flag_enum flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN flag state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection

Input parameter{in}	
<b>flag</b>	CAN flags
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE2</i>	mailbox 2 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE1</i>	mailbox 1 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE0</i>	mailbox 0 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF2</i>	mailbox 2 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF1</i>	mailbox 1 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF0</i>	mailbox 0 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFO0</i>	receive FIFO0 overfull
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFF0</i>	receive FIFO0 full
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFO1</i>	receive FIFO1 overfull
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFF1</i>	receive FIFO1 full
<i>CAN_FLAG_BOERR</i>	bus-off error
<i>CAN_FLAG_PERR</i>	passive error
<i>CAN_FLAG_WERR</i>	warning error
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* get CAN0 mailbox 0 transmit finished flag */
can_flag_get (CAN0, CAN_FLAG_MTF0);
```

## can\_flag\_clear

The description of can\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-100. Function can\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	can_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void can_flag_clear(uint32_t can_periph, can_flag_enum flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear CAN flag state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>flag</b>	CAN flags
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE2</i>	mailbox 2 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE1</i>	mailbox 1 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE0</i>	mailbox 0 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF2</i>	mailbox 2 transmit finished



<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF1</i>	mailbox 1 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF0</i>	mailbox 0 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFO0</i>	receive FIFO0 overfull
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFF0</i>	receive FIFO0 full
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFO1</i>	receive FIFO1 overfull
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFF1</i>	receive FIFO1 full
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear CAN0 mailbox 0 transmit error flag */
```

```
can_flag_clear (CAN0, CAN_FLAG_MTE0);
```

### can\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of can\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-101. Function can\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	can_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus can_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t can_periph, can_interrupt_flag_enum flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CAN interrupt flag state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>can_periph</b>	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	CAN interrupt flags
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_SLPIF</i>	status change interrupt flag of sleep working mode entering
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_WUIF</i>	status change interrupt flag of wakeup from sleep working mode
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_ERRIF</i>	error interrupt flag
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF2</i>	mailbox 2 transmit finished interrupt flag
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF1</i>	mailbox 1 transmit finished interrupt flag
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF0</i>	mailbox 0 transmit finished interrupt flag
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_RFO0</i>	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt flag
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_RFF0</i>	receive FIFO0 full interrupt flag
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_RFO1</i>	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt flag
<i>CAN_INT_FLAG_RFF1</i>	receive FIFO1 full interrupt flag

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* get CAN0 mailbox 0 transmit finished interrupt flag */
can_interrupt_flag_get (CAN0, CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF0);
```

## can\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of can\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-102. Function can\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

Function name	can_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void can_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t can_periph, can_interrupt_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	clear CAN interrupt flag state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
flag	CAN interrupt flags
CAN_INT_FLAG_SLPIF	status change interrupt flag of sleep working mode entering
CAN_INT_FLAG_WUIF	status change interrupt flag of wakeup from sleep working mode
CAN_INT_FLAG_ERRIF	error interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF2	mailbox 2 transmit finished interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF1	mailbox 1 transmit finished interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF0	mailbox 0 transmit finished interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_RFO0	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_RFF0	receive FIFO0 full interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_RFO1	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_RFF1	receive FIFO1 full interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear CAN0 mailbox 0 transmit finished interrupt flag */
```

```
can_interrupt_flag_clear (CAN0, CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF0);
```

## 3.5. CRC

A cyclic redundancy check (CRC) is an error-detecting code commonly used in digital networks and storage devices to detect accidental changes to raw data. The CRC registers are listed in chapter [3.5.1](#), the CRC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.5.2](#).

### 3.5.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CRC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-103. CRC Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
CRC_DATA	CRC data register
CRC_FDATA	CRC free data register
CRC_CTL	CRC control register

### 3.5.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CRC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-104. CRC firmware function**

Function name	Function description
crc_deinit	deinit CRC calculation unit
crc_data_register_reset	reset data register to the initializaiton value of data register
crc_data_register_read	read the value of the data register
crc_free_data_register_read	read the value of the free data register
crc_free_data_register_write	write data to the free data register
crc_single_data_calculate	calculate the CRC value of a 32-bit data
crc_block_data_calculate	calculate the CRC value of an array of 32-bit values

#### crc\_deinit

The description of `crc_deinit` is shown as below:

**Table 3-105. Function `crc_deinit`**

Function name	crc_deinit
Function prototype	void crc_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinit CRC calculation unit
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset crc */
```

```
crc_deinit();
```

## crc\_data\_register\_reset

The description of crc\_data\_register\_reset is shown as below:

**Table 3-106. Function crc\_data\_register\_reset**

<b>Function name</b>	crc_data_register_reset
<b>Function prototype</b>	void crc_data_register_reset(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reset data register to the initializaiton value of data register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset crc data register */
```

```
crc_data_register_reset ();
```

## crc\_data\_register\_read

The description of crc\_data\_register\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-107. Function crc\_data\_register\_read**

<b>Function name</b>	crc_data_register_read
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint32_t crc_data_register_read(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	read the value of the data register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint32_t</b>	32-bit value of the data register (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read crc data register */

uint32_t crc_value = 0;

crc_value = crc_data_register_read();
```

## **crc\_free\_data\_register\_read**

The description of `crc_free_data_register_read` is shown as below:

**Table 3-108. Function `crc_free_data_register_read`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>crc_free_data_register_read</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>uint8_t crc_free_data_register_read(void);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	read the value of the free data register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint8_t</b>	8-bit value of the free data register (0-0xFF)

Example:

```
/* read crc free data register */

uint8_t crc_value = 0;

crc_value = crc_free_data_register_read();
```

## **crc\_free\_data\_register\_write**

The description of `crc_free_data_register_write` is shown as below:

**Table 3-109. Function `crc_free_data_register_write`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>crc_free_data_register_write</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void crc_free_data_register_write(uint8_t free_data);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	write data to the free data register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>free_data</b>	specify 8-bit data

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write the free data register */
crc_free_data_register_write(0x11);
```

## crc\_single\_data\_calculate

The description of crc\_single\_data\_calculate is shown as below:

**Table 3-110. Function crc\_single\_data\_calculate**

Function name	crc_single_data_calculate
Function prototype	uint32_t crc_single_data_calculate(uint32_t sdata);
Function descriptions	calculate the CRC value of a 32-bit data
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sdata	specify 32-bit data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	32-bit CRC calculate value (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* CRC calculate a 32-bit data */
uint32_t val = 0, valcrc = 0;
val = (uint32_t)0xabcd1234;
rcu_periph_clock_enable(RCU_CRC);
valcrc = crc_single_data_calculate(val);
```

## crc\_block\_data\_calculate

The description of crc\_block\_data\_calculate is shown as below:

**Table 3-111. Function crc\_block\_data\_calculate**

Function name	crc_block_data_calculate
Function prototype	uint32_t crc_block_data_calculate(uint32_t array[], uint32_t size);
Function descriptions	calculate the CRC value of an array of 32-bit values
Precondition	-

<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>array</b>	pointer to an array of 32 bit data words
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>size</b>	size of the array
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint32_t</b>	32-bit CRC calculate value (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```

/* CRC calculate a 32-bit data array */

/* CRC calculate a 32-bit data array */

#define BUFFER_SIZE    6

uint32_t valcrc = 0;

static const uint32_t data_buffer[BUFFER_SIZE] = {

0x00001111, 0x00002222, 0x00003333, 0x00004444, 0x00005555, 0x00006666};

rcu_periph_clock_enable(RCU_CRC);

valcrc = crc_block_data_calculate((uint32_t *) data_buffer, BUFFER_SIZE);

```

## 3.6. CTC

The CTC unit trims the frequency of the IRC48M which is based on an external accurate reference signal source. It can adjust the calibration value to provide a precise IRC48M clock automatically or manually. The CTC registers are listed in chapter [3.6.1](#), the CTC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.6.2](#)

### 3.6.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CTC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-112. CTC Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
CTC_CTL0	CTC control register 0
CTC_CTL1	CTC control register 1
CTC_STAT	CTC status register
CTC_INTC	CTC Interrupt clear register

## 3.6.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CTC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-113. CTC firmware function**

Function name	Function description
ctc_deinit	reset CTC clock trim controller
ctc_counter_enable	enable CTC trim counter
ctc_counter_disable	disable CTC trim counter
ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config	configure the IRC48M trim value
ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate	generate software reference source sync pulse
ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config	configure hardware automatically trim mode
ctc_refsource_polarity_config	configure reference signal source polarity
ctc_refsource_signal_select	select reference signal source
ctc_refsource_prescaler_config	configure reference signal source prescaler
ctc_clock_limit_value_config	configure clock trim base limit value
ctc_counter_reload_value_config	configure CTC counter reload value
ctc_counter_capture_value_read	read CTC counter capture value when reference sync pulse occurred
ctc_counter_direction_read	read CTC trim counter direction when reference sync pulse occurred
ctc_counter_reload_value_read	read CTC counter reload value
ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read	read the IRC48M trim value
ctc_interrupt_enable	enable the CTC interrupt
ctc_interrupt_disable	disable the CTC interrupt
ctc_interrupt_flag_get	get CTC interrupt flag
ctc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear CTC interrupt flag
ctc_flag_get	get CTC flag
ctc_flag_clear	clear CTC flag

### ctc\_deinit

The description of ctc\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-114. Function ctc\_deinit**

Function name	ctc_deinit
Function prototype	void ctc_deinit (void)
Function descriptions	Reset CTC peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	



-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset CTC */
```

```
ctc_deinit();
```

## ctc\_counter\_enable

The description of ctc\_counter\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-115. Function ctc\_counter\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_counter_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_counter_enable (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable CTC counter
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CTC trim counter*/
```

```
ctc_counter_enable ();
```

## ctc\_counter\_disable

The description of ctc\_counter\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-116. Function ctc\_counter\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_counter_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_counter_disable (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable CTC counter
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* disable CTC trim counter */
```

```
ctc_counter_disable ();
```

## ctc\_irc48m\_trim\_value\_config

The description of ctc\_irc48m\_trim\_value\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-117. Function ctc\_irc48m\_trim\_value\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config(uint8_t trim_value);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the IRC48M trim value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
trim_value	0~63
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* IRC48M trim value configuration */
```

```
ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config (0x01);
```

## ctc\_software\_refsource\_pulse\_generate

The description of ctc\_software\_refsource\_pulse\_generate is shown as below:

**Table 3-118. Function ctc\_software\_refsource\_pulse\_generate**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate (void)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	generate software reference source sync pulse
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* generate reference source sync pulse */

ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate ();
```

## ctc\_hardware\_trim\_mode\_config

The description of ctc\_hardware\_trim\_mode\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-119. Function ctc\_hardware\_trim\_mode\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config(uint32_t hardmode);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure hardware automatically trim mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>hardmode</b>	hardware automatically trim mode enable or disable
CTC_HARDWARE_TRIM_MODE_ENABLE	hardware automatically trim mode enable
CTC_HARDWARE_TRIM_MODE_DISABLE	hardware automatically trim mode disable
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CTC hardware trim */

ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config (CTC_HARDWARE_TRIM_MODE_ENABLE);
```

## ctc\_refsource\_polarity\_config

The description of ctc\_refsource\_polarity\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-120. Function ctc\_refsource\_polarity\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_refsource_polarity_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_refsource_polarity_config(uint32_t polarity);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure reference signal source polarity
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>polarity</b>	reference signal source polarity
CTC_REFSOURCE_POLARITY_FALLING	reference signal source polarity is falling edge

<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_POLARITY_RISING</i>	reference signal source polarity is rising edge
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set reference source polarity */
```

```
ctc_refsource_polarity_config (CTC_REFSOURCE_POLARITY_RISING);
```

## ctc\_refsource\_signal\_select

The description of ctc\_refsource\_signal\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-121. Function ctc\_refsource\_signal\_select**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_refsource_signal_select
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_refsource_signal_select(uint32_t refs);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	select reference signal source
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>refs</b>	reference signal source
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_GPIO</i>	GPIO is selected
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_LXTAL</i>	LXTAL is selected
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reference signal selection */
```

```
ctc_refsource_signal_select (CTC_REFSOURCE_LXTAL);
```

## ctc\_refsource\_prescaler\_config

The description of ctc\_refsource\_prescaler\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-122. Function ctc\_refsource\_prescaler\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_refsource_prescaler_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_refsource_prescaler_config(uint32_t prescaler);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure reference signal source prescaler

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>prescaler</b>	Prescaler factor
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_P</i> <i>SC_OFF</i>	reference signal not divided
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_P</i> <i>SC_DIV2</i>	reference signal divided by 2
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_P</i> <i>SC_DIV4</i>	reference signal divided by 4
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_P</i> <i>SC_DIV8</i>	reference signal divided by 8
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_P</i> <i>SC_DIV16</i>	reference signal divided by 16
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_P</i> <i>SC_DIV32</i>	reference signal divided by 32
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_P</i> <i>SC_DIV64</i>	reference signal divided by 64
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_P</i> <i>SC_DIV128</i>	reference signal divided by 128
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure reference signal source prescaler */
```

```
ctc_refsource_prescaler_config(CTC_REFSOURCE_PSC_DIV2);
```

## ctc\_clock\_limit\_value\_config

The description of ctc\_clock\_limit\_value\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-123. Function ctc\_clock\_limit\_value\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_clock_limit_value_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_clock_limit_value_config(uint8_t limit_value);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure clock trim base limit value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>limit_value</b>	0x00 - 0xFF
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure clock trim base limit value */
```

```
ctc_clock_limit_value_config (0x1F);
```

## ctc\_counter\_reload\_value\_config

The description of ctc\_counter\_reload\_value\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-124. Function ctc\_counter\_reload\_value\_config**

Function name	ctc_counter_reload_value_config
Function prototype	void ctc_counter_reload_value_config(uint16_t reload_value);
Function descriptions	configure CTC counter reload value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
reload_value	0x0000 - 0xFFFF
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CTC counter reload value */
```

```
ctc_counter_reload_value_config (0x00FF);
```

## ctc\_counter\_capture\_value\_read

The description of ctc\_counter\_capture\_value\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-125. Function ctc\_counter\_capture\_value\_read**

Function name	ctc_counter_capture_value_read
Function prototype	uint16_t ctc_counter_capture_value_read(void);
Function descriptions	read CTC counter capture value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	读取计数器捕获值(0x0000 - 0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read CTC counter capture value */

uint16_t ctc_value = 0;

ctc_value = ctc_counter_capture_value_read ();
```

## ctc\_counter\_direction\_read

The description of ctc\_counter\_direction\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-126. Function ctc\_counter\_direction\_read**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_counter_direction_read
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus ctc_counter_direction_read(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	read CTC trim counter direction
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET(向下计数) / RESET(向上计数)

Example:

```
/* read ctc counter direction */

FlagStatus ctc_direction = SET;

ctc_direction = ctc_counter_direction_read ();
```

## ctc\_counter\_reload\_value\_read

The description of ctc\_counter\_reload\_value\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-127. Function ctc\_counter\_reload\_value\_read**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_counter_reload_value_read
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t ctc_counter_reload_value_read(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	read CTC counter reload value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

<b>uint16_t</b>	读取计数器重载值的16位数据 (0x0000 - 0xFFFF)
-----------------	----------------------------------

Example:

```
/* read CTC counter reload value */

uint16_t ctc_reload_value = 0;

ctc_reload_value = ctc_counter_reload_value_read ();
```

## ctc\_irc48m\_trim\_value\_read

The description of ctc\_irc48m\_trim\_value\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-128. Function ctc\_irc48m\_trim\_value\_read**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	read the IRC48M trim value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint8_t</b>	6位IRC48M校准值 (0-63)

Example:

```
/* read the IRC48M trim value */

uint8_t ctc_trim_value = 0;

ctc_trim_value = ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read ();
```

## ctc\_interrupt\_enable

The description of ctc\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-129. Function ctc\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the CTC interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	CTC interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_CKOK</i>	clock trim OK interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_CKWARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt



<i>CTC_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_ERE</i>	expect reference interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CTC clock trim OK interrupt */
ctc_interrupt_enable (CTC_INT_CKOK);
```

## ctc\_interrupt\_disable

The description of ctc\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-130. Function ctc\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the CTC interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	CTC interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_CKOK</i>	clock trim OK interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_CKWARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_ERE</i>	expect reference interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CTC clock trim OK interrupt */
ctc_interrupt_disable (CTC_INT_CKOK);
```

## ctc\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of ctc\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-131. Function ctc\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus ctc_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CTC interrupt flag

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	CTC interrupt flag
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_CKO K</i>	clock trim OK interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_CKW ARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_ERE F</i>	expect reference interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_CKE RR</i>	clock trim error bit interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_REF MISS</i>	reference sync pulse miss interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_TRIM ERR</i>	trim value error interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get CTC interrupt flag status */
```

```
FlagStatus state = ctc_interrupt_flag_get (CTC_INT_FLAG_CKOK);
```

## ctc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of ctc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-132. Function ctc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear CTC interrupt flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	CTC interrupt flag
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_CKO K</i>	clock trim OK interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_CKW ARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_ERE F</i>	expect reference interrupt

<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_CKE</i> <i>RR</i>	clock trim error bit interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_REF</i> <i>MISS</i>	reference sync pulse miss interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_TRIM</i> <i>ERR</i>	trim value error interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/*clear CTC interrupt flag status */
```

```
ctc_interrupt_flag_clear (CTC_INT_FLAG_CKOK);
```

### ctc\_flag\_get

The description of ctc\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-133. Function ctc\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus ctc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get CTC status flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	CTC status flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_CKOK</i>	clock trim OK interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_CKWARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_ERR</i>	error interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_EREFP</i>	expect reference interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_CKERR</i>	clock trim error bit
<i>CTC_FLAG_REFMISS</i>	reference sync pulse miss flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_TRIMERR</i>	trim value error flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get CTC flag status */
```

```
FlagStatus state = ctc_flag_get (CTC_FLAG_CKOK);
```

## ctc\_flag\_clear

The description of ctc\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-134. Function ctc\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	ctc_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ctc_flag_clear (uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear CTC status flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	CTC status flag
CTC_FLAG_CKOK	clock trim OK interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_CKWARN	clock trim warning interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_ERR	error interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_EREFP	expect reference interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_CKERR	clock trim error bit
CTC_FLAG_REFMIS	reference sync pulse miss flag
CTC_FLAG_TRIMERR	trim value error flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear CTC flag status */
ctc_flag_clear (CTC_FLAG_CKOK);
```

## 3.7. DAC

The Digital-to-analog converter converts 12-bit digital data to a voltage on the external pins. The DAC registers are listed in chapter [3.7.1](#), the DAC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.7.2](#).

### 3.7.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

DAC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-135. DAC Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
DAC_CTL0	DACx control register 0
DAC_SWT	DACx software trigger register
DAC_OUT0_R12DH	DACx_OUT0 12-bit right-aligned data holding register

Registers	Descriptions
DAC_OUT0_L12DH	DACx_OUT0 12-bit left-aligned data holding register
DAC_OUT0_R8DH	DACx_OUT0 8-bit right-aligned data holding register
DAC_OUT1_R12DH	DACx_OUT1 12-bit right-aligned data holding register
DAC_OUT1_L12DH	DACx_OUT1 12-bit left-aligned data holding register
DAC_OUT1_R8DH	DACx_OUT1 8-bit right-aligned data holding register
DACC_R12DH	DACx concurrent mode 12-bit right-aligned data holding register
DACC_L12DH	DACx concurrent mode 12-bit left-aligned data holding register
DACC_R8DH	DACx concurrent mode 8-bit right-aligned data holding register
DAC_OUT0_DO	DACx_OUT0 data output register
DAC_OUT1_DO	DACx_OUT1 data output register

## 3.7.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

DAC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-136. DAC firmware function**

Function name	Function description
<code>dac_deinit</code>	deinitialize DAC
<code>dac_enable</code>	enable DAC
<code>dac_disable</code>	disable DAC
<code>dac_dma_enable</code>	enable DAC DMA function
<code>dac_dma_disable</code>	disable DAC DMA function
<code>dac_output_buffer_enable</code>	enable DAC output buffer
<code>dac_output_buffer_disable</code>	disable DAC output buffer
<code>dac_output_value_get</code>	get DAC output value
<code>dac_data_set</code>	set DAC data holding register value
<code>dac_trigger_enable</code>	enable DAC trigger
<code>dac_trigger_disable</code>	disable DAC trigger
<code>dac_trigger_source_config</code>	configure DAC trigger source
<code>dac_software_trigger_enable</code>	enable DAC software trigger
<code>dac_wave_mode_config</code>	configure DAC wave mode
<code>dac_lfsr_noise_config</code>	configure DAC LFSR noise mode
<code>dac_triangle_noise_config</code>	configure DAC triangle noise mode
<code>dac_concurrent_enable</code>	enable DAC concurrent mode
<code>dac_concurrent_disable</code>	disable DAC concurrent mode
<code>dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable</code>	enable DAC concurrent software trigger
<code>dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable</code>	enable DAC concurrent buffer function
<code>dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable</code>	disable DAC concurrent buffer function
<code>dac_concurrent_data_set</code>	set DAC concurrent mode data holding register value

### **`dac_deinit`**

The description of `dac_deinit` is shown as below:

**Table 3-137. Function dac\_deinit**

<b>Function name</b>	dac_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dac_deinit(uint32_t dac_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	deinitialize DAC
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize DAC0 */
dac_deinit(DAC0);
```

## **dac\_enable**

The description of dac\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-138. Function dac\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dac_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dac_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable DAC
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection(x = 0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 */
dac_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

## dac\_disable

The description of dac\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-139. Function dac\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dac_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dac_disable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable DAC
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection (x = 0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0_OUT0 */
dac_disable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

## dac\_dma\_enable

The description of dac\_dma\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-140. Function dac\_dma\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dac_dma_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dac_dma_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable DAC DMA function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection (x = 0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 DMA function */
```

```
dac_dma_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

## **dac\_dma\_disable**

The description of `dac_dma_disable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-141. Function `dac_dma_disable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_dma_disable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_dma_disable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable DAC DMA function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection(x = 0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0_OUT0 DMA function */
```

```
dac_dma_disable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

## **dac\_output\_buffer\_enable**

The description of `dac_output_buffer_enable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-142. Function `dac_output_buffer_enable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_output_buffer_enable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_output_buffer_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable DAC output buffer
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)



Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection(x = 0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 output buffer */
dac_output_buffer_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

### **dac\_output\_buffer\_disable**

The description of dac\_output\_buffer\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-143. Function dac\_output\_buffer\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dac_output_buffer_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dac_output_buffer_disable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable DAC output buffer
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection(x = 0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0_OUT0 output buffer */
dac_output_buffer_disable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

### **dac\_output\_value\_get**

The description of dac\_output\_value\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-144. Function dac\_output\_value\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	dac_output_value_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t dac_output_value_get(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	get DAC output value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection(x = 0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint16_t</b>	DAC output data (0~4095)

Example:

```
/* get the DAC0_OUT0 last data output value */
```

```
uint16_t data=0;
```

```
data = dac_output_value_get(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

## **dac\_data\_set**

The description of dac\_data\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-145. Function dac\_data\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	dac_data_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dac_data_set(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t dac_align, uint16_t data);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set DAC data holding register value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection(x = 0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_align</b>	DAC data alignment mode
<i>DAC_ALIGN_12B_R</i>	12-bit right-aligned data
<i>DAC_ALIGN_12B_L</i>	12-bit left-aligned data
<i>DAC_ALIGN_8B_R</i>	8-bit right-aligned data
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>data</b>	data to be loaded (0~4095)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set DAC0_OUT0 data holding register value */
dac_data_set(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_ALIGN_8B_R, 0xFF);
```

## **dac\_trigger\_enable**

The description of dac\_trigger\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-146. Function dac\_trigger\_enable**

Function name	dac_trigger_enable
Function prototype	void dac_trigger_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
Function descriptions	enable DAC trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection (x = 0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 trigger */
dac_trigger_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

## **dac\_trigger\_disable**

The description of dac\_trigger\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-147. Function dac\_trigger\_disable**

Function name	dac_trigger_disable
Function prototype	void dac_trigger_disable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
Function descriptions	disable DAC trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection (x = 0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0_OUT0 trigger */
```

```
dac_trigger_disable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

## **dac\_trigger\_source\_config**

The description of `dac_trigger_source_config` is shown as below:

**Table 3-148. Function `dac_trigger_source_config`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_trigger_source_config</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_trigger_source_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t triggersource);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure DAC trigger source
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection (x = 0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
<b>triggersource</b>	external trigger of DAC
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T5_TRGO</i>	TIMER5 TRGO
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T2_TRGO</i>	TIMER2 TRGO
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T6_TRGO</i>	TIMER6 TRGO
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T4_TRGO</i>	TIMER4 TRGO
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T1_TRGO</i>	TIMER1 TRGO

0	
DAC_TRIGGER_T3_TRG 0	TIMER3 TRGO
DAC_TRIGGER_EXTI_9	EXTI interrupt line9 event
DAC_TRIGGER_SOFTWARE	software trigger
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0_OUT0 trigger source */
```

```
dac_trigger_source_config(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_TRIGGER_T1_TRGO);
```

## **dac\_software\_trigger\_enable**

The description of dac\_software\_trigger\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-149. Function dac\_software\_trigger\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dac_software_trigger_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dac_software_trigger_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable DAC software trigger
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection(x = 0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 software trigger */
```

```
dac_software_trigger_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

## **dac\_wave\_mode\_config**

The description of `dac_wave_mode_config` is shown as below:

**Table 3-150. Function `dac_wave_mode_config`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_wave_mode_config</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_wave_mode_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t wave_mode);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure DAC wave mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection (x = 0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>wave_mode</b>	DAC wave mode
<i>DAC_WAVE_DISABLE</i>	wave mode disable
<i>DAC_WAVE_MODE_LFSR</i>	LFSR noise mode
<i>DAC_WAVE_MODE_TRIANGLE</i>	triangle noise mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0_OUT0 wave mode */
```

```
dac_wave_mode_config(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_WAVE_DISABLE);
```

## **dac\_lfsr\_noise\_config**

The description of `dac_lfsr_noise_config` is shown as below:

**Table 3-151. Function `dac_lfsr_noise_config`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_lfsr_noise_config</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_lfsr_noise_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t unmask_bits);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure DAC LFSR noise mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection (x = 0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>unmask_bits</b>	LFSR noise unmask bits
<i>DAC_LFSR_BIT0</i>	unmask the LFSR bit0
<i>DAC_LFSR_BITSx_0</i>	unmask the LFSR bits [x:0] (x = 1,2,3..11)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0_OUT0 LFSR noise mode */
```

```
dac_lfsr_noise_config(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_LFSR_BIT0);
```

## **dac\_triangle\_noise\_config**

The description of `dac_triangle_noise_config` is shown as below:

**Table 3-152. Function `dac_triangle_noise_config`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_triangle_noise_config</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_triangle_noise_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t amplitude);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure DAC triangle noise mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_out</b>	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection (x = 0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>amplitude</b>	the amplitude of the triangle
<i>DAC_TRIANGLE_AMPLITUDE_x</i>	$x = 2^n - 1$ (n = 1..12)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0_OUT0 triangle noise mode */  
  
dac_triangle_noise_config(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_TRIANGLE_AMPLITUDE_1);
```

## **dac\_concurrent\_enable**

The description of `dac_concurrent_enable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-153. Function `dac_concurrent_enable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_concurrent_enable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_concurrent_enable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable DAC concurrent mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0 concurrent mode */  
  
dac_concurrent_enable(DAC0);
```

## **dac\_concurrent\_disable**

The description of `dac_concurrent_disable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-154. Function `dac_concurrent_disable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_concurrent_disable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_concurrent_disable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable DAC concurrent mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-



Example:

```
/* disable DAC0 concurrent mode */
```

```
dac_concurrent_disable(DAC0);
```

## **dac\_concurrent\_software\_trigger\_enable**

The description of `dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-155. Function `dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable DAC concurrent software trigger
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0 concurrent software trigger */
```

```
dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable(DAC0);
```

## **dac\_concurrent\_output\_buffer\_enable**

The description of `dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-156. Function `dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable DAC concurrent buffer function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0 concurrent buffer function */  
  
dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable(DAC0);
```

## **dac\_concurrent\_output\_buffer\_disable**

The description of `dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-157. Function `dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable DAC concurrent buffer function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0 concurrent buffer function */  
  
dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable(DAC0);
```

## **dac\_concurrent\_data\_set**

The description of `dac_concurrent_data_set` is shown as below:

**Table 3-158. Function `dac_concurrent_data_set`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>dac_concurrent_data_set</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void dac_concurrent_data_set(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t dac_align, uint16_t data0, uint16_t data1);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set DAC concurrent mode data holding register value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_periph</b>	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dac_align</b>	DAC data alignment mode
<i>DAC_ALIGN_8B_R</i>	8-bit right-aligned data

<i>DAC_ALIGN_12B_R</i>	12-bit right-aligned data
<i>DAC_ALIGN_12B_L</i>	12-bit left-aligned data
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>data0</b>	DACx_OUT0 data to be loaded (0~4095)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>data1</b>	DACx_OUT1 data to be loaded (0~4095)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set DAC0 concurrent mode data holding register value */
```

```
dac_concurrent_data_set(DAC0, DAC_ALIGN_8B_R, 0xFF, 0xFF);
```

## 3.8. DBG

The DBG hold unit helps debugger to debug power saving mode. The DBG registers are listed in chapter [3.8.1](#). the DBG firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.8.2](#).

### 3.8.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

DBG registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-159. DBG Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
DBG_ID	DBG ID code register
DBG_CTL	DBG control register

### 3.8.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

DBG firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-160. DBG firmware function**

Function name	Function description
dbg_id_get	read DBG_ID code register
dbg_low_power_enable	enable low power behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_low_power_disable	disable low power behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_periph_enable	enable peripheral behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_periph_disable	disable peripheral behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_trace_pin_enable	enable trace pin assignment
dbg_trace_pin_disable	disable trace pin assignment

## Enum dbg\_periph\_enum

**Table 3-161. Enum dbg\_periph\_enum**

Member name	Function description
DBG_FWDGT_HOLD	debug FWDGT kept when core is halted
DBG_WWDGT_HOLD	debug WWDGT kept when core is halted
DBG_TIMER0_HOLD	hold TIMER0 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER1_HOLD	hold TIMER1 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER2_HOLD	hold TIMER2 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER3_HOLD	hold TIMER3 counter when core is halted
DBG_CAN0_HOLD	debug CAN0 kept when core is halted
DBG_I2C0_HOLD	hold I2C0 smbus when core is halted
DBG_I2C1_HOLD	hold I2C1 smbus when core is halted
DBG_TIMER4_HOLD	hold TIMER4 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER5_HOLD	hold TIMER5 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER6_HOLD	hold TIMER6 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER7_HOLD	hold TIMER7 counter when core is halted
DBG_CAN1_HOLD	debug CAN1 kept when core is halted
DBG_TIMER11_HOLD	hold TIMER11 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER12_HOLD	hold TIMER12 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER13_HOLD	hold TIMER13 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER8_HOLD	hold TIMER8 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER9_HOLD	hold TIMER9 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER10_HOLD	hold TIMER10 counter when core is halted

## dbg\_id\_get

The description of dbg\_id\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-162. Function dbg\_id\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	dbg_id_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint32_t dbg_id_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	Read DBG_ID code register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
uint32_t	DBG_ID code (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read DBG_ID code register */
```

```
uint32_t id_value = 0;

id_value = dbg_id_get();
```

## dbg\_low\_power\_enable

The description of dbg\_low\_power\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-163. Function dbg\_low\_power\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dbg_low_power_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dbg_low_power_enable(uint32_t dbg_low_power);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	Enable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dbg_low_power</b>	low power mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP	keep debugger connection during sleep mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_DEEPSLEEP	keep debugger connection during deepsleep mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_STANDBY	keep debugger connection during standby mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */

dbg_low_power_enable(DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP);
```

## dbg\_low\_power\_disable

The description of dbg\_low\_power\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-164. Function dbg\_low\_power\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dbg_low_power_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dbg_low_power_disable(uint32_t dbg_low_power);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	Disable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dbg_low_power</b>	low power mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP	keep debugger connection during sleep mode

<i>DBG_LOW_POWER_D EEPSLEEP</i>	keep debugger connection during deepsleep mode
<i>DBG_LOW_POWER_S TANDBY</i>	keep debugger connection during standby mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */
```

```
dbg_low_power_disable(DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP);
```

### dbg\_periph\_enable

The description of dbg\_periph\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-165. Function dbg\_periph\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dbg_periph_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dbg_periph_enable(dbg_periph_enum dbg_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	Enable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dbg_periph</b>	Peripheral refer to <a href="#">Table 3-161. Enum dbg_periph_enum</a>
<i>DBG_FWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug FWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_WWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug WWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_CANx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1, hold CANx counter when core is halted
<i>DBG_I2Cx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1, hold I2Cx smbus when core is halted
<i>DBG_TIMERx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13, hold TIMERx counter when core is halted
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */
```

```
dbg_periph_enable(DBG_TIMER0_HOLD);
```

### dbg\_periph\_disable

The description of dbg\_periph\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-166. Function dbg\_periph\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dbg_periph_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dbg_periph_disable(dbg_periph_enum dbg_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	Disable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dbg_periph</b>	peripheral refer to <a href="#">Table 3-161. Enum dbg_periph_enum</a>
<i>DBG_FWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug FWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_WWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug WWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_CANx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1, hold CANx counter when core is halted
<i>DBG_I2Cx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1, hold I2Cx smbus when core is halted
<i>DBG_TIMERx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13, hold TIMERx counter when core is halted
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */
dbg_periph_disable(DBG_TIMER0_HOLD);
```

## dbg\_trace\_pin\_enable

The description of dbg\_trace\_pin\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-167. Function dbg\_trace\_pin\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dbg_trace_pin_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dbg_trace_pin_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	Enable trace pin assignment
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable trace pin assignment */
dbg_trace_pin_enable();
```

## dbg\_trace\_pin\_disable

The description of dbg\_trace\_pin\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-168. Function dbg\_trace\_pin\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dbg_trace_pin_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dbg_trace_pin_disable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	Disable trace pin assignment
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable trace pin assignment */
dbg_trace_pin_disable();
```

## 3.9. DMA

The direct memory access (DMA) controller provides a hardware method of transferring data between peripherals and/or memory without intervention from the CPU, thereby freeing up bandwidth for other system functions. The DMA registers are listed in chapter [3.9.1](#), the DMA firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.9.2](#).

### 3.9.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

DMA registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-169. DMA Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
DMA_INTF	Interrupt flag register
DMA_INTC	Interrupt flag clear register
DMA_CHxCTL (x=0..6)	Channel x control register
DMA_CHxCNT (x=0..6)	Channel x counter register
DMA_CHxPADDR (x=0..6)	Channel x peripheral base address register
DMA_CHxMADDR	Channel x memory base address register



Registers	Descriptions
(x=0..6)	

## 3.9.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

DMA firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-170. DMA firmware function**

Function name	Function description
<code>dma_deinit</code>	deinitialize DMA a channel registers
<code>dma_struct_para_init</code>	initialize the parameters of DMA struct with the default values
<code>dma_init</code>	initialize DMA channel
<code>dma_circulation_enable</code>	enable DMA circulation mode
<code>dma_circulation_disable</code>	disable DMA circulation mode
<code>dma_memory_to_memory_enable</code>	enable memory to memory mode
<code>dma_memory_to_memory_disable</code>	disable memory to memory mode
<code>dma_channel_enable</code>	enable DMA channel
<code>dma_channel_disable</code>	disable DMA channel
<code>dma_periph_address_config</code>	set DMA peripheral base address
<code>dma_memory_address_config</code>	set DMA memory base address
<code>dma_transfer_number_config</code>	set the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
<code>dma_transfer_number_get</code>	get the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
<code>dma_priority_config</code>	configure priority level of DMA channel
<code>dma_memory_width_config</code>	configure transfer data size of memory
<code>dma_periph_width_config</code>	configure transfer data size of peripheral
<code>dma_memory_increase_enable</code>	enable next address increasement algorithm of memory
<code>dma_memory_increase_disable</code>	disable next address increasement algorithm of memory
<code>dma_periph_increase_enable</code>	enable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
<code>dma_periph_increase_disable</code>	disable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
<code>dma_transfer_direction_config</code>	configure the direction of data transfer on the channel
<code>dma_flag_get</code>	check DMA flag is set or not
<code>dma_flag_clear</code>	clear the flag of a DMA channel
<code>dma_interrupt_flag_get</code>	check DMA flag and interrupt enable bit is set or not
<code>dma_interrupt_flag_clear</code>	clear the interrupt flag of a DMA channel
<code>dma_interrupt_enable</code>	enable DMA interrupt
<code>dma_interrupt_disable</code>	disable DMA interrupt

## Structure dma\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-171. Structure dma\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
periph_addr	peripheral base address
periph_width	transfer data size of peripheral
memory_addr	memory base address
memory_width	transfer data size of memory
number	channel transfer number
priority	channel priority level
periph_inc	peripheral increasing mode
memory_inc	memory increasing mode
direction	channel data transfer direction

## dma\_deinit

The description of dma\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-172. Function dma\_deinit**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_deinit(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	deinitialize DMA a channel registers
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA0 channel0 initialize */
dma_deinit(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## dma\_struct\_para\_init

The description of dma\_struct\_para\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-173. Function dma\_struct\_para\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_struct_para_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_struct_para_init(dma_parameter_struct* init_struct);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize the parameters of DMA struct with the default values
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>*init_struct</b>	a spi_parameter_struct address
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the parameters of DMA */
dma_parameter_struct dma_init_struct;
dma_struct_para_init(&dma_init_struct);
```

## **dma\_init**

The description of dma\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-174. Function dma\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_init(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, dma_parameter_struct* init_struct);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize DMA channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>init_struct</b>	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-171. Structure dma_parameter_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA0 channel0 initialize */
dma_parameter_struct dma_init_struct;
dma_deinit(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
dma_struct_para_init(&dma_init_struct);

dma_init_struct.direction = DMA_PERIPHERAL_TO_MEMORY;
dma_init_struct.memory_addr = (uint32_t)g_destbuf;
dma_init_struct.memory_inc = DMA_MEMORY_INCREASE_ENABLE;
dma_init_struct.memory_width = DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_8BIT;
dma_init_struct.number = TRANSFER_NUM;
dma_init_struct.periph_addr = (uint32_t)BANK0_WRITE_START_ADDR;
dma_init_struct.periph_inc = DMA_PERIPH_INCREASE_ENABLE;
dma_init_struct.periph_width = DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_8BIT;
dma_init_struct.priority = DMA_PRIORITY_ULTRA_HIGH;
dma_init(DMA0, DMA_CH0, &dma_init_struct);
```

## **dma\_circulation\_enable**

The description of dma\_circulation\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-175. Function dma\_circulation\_enable**

Function name	dma_circulation_enable
Function prototype	void dma_circulation_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable DMA circulation mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA0 channel0 circulation mode */
dma_circulation_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## **dma\_circulation\_disable**

The description of dma\_circulation\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-176. Function dma\_circulation\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_circulation_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_circulation_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable DMA circulation mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA0 channel0 circulation mode */
dma_circulation_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## **dma\_memory\_to\_memory\_enable**

The description of dma\_memory\_to\_memory\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-177. Function dma\_memory\_to\_memory\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_memory_to_memory_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_memory_to_memory_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable memory to memory mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..</i>	DMA channel selection

6; DMA1: x=0..4)	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA0 channel0 memory to memory mode */
dma_memory_to_memory_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## **dma\_memory\_to\_memory\_disable**

The description of dma\_memory\_to\_memory\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-178. Function dma\_memory\_to\_memory\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_memory_to_memory_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_memory_to_memory_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable memory to memory mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
DMAx(x=0, 1)	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA0 channel0 memory to memory mode */
dma_memory_to_memory_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## **dma\_channel\_enable**

The description of dma\_channel\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-179. Function dma\_channel\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_channel_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_channel_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable DMA channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA0 channel0 */
dma_channel_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## **dma\_channel\_disable**

The description of dma\_channel\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-180. Function dma\_channel\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_channel_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_channel_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable DMA channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA0 channel0 */
```

```
dma_channel_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## dma\_periph\_address\_config

The description of dma\_periph\_address\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-181. Function dma\_periph\_address\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_periph_address_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_periph_address_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t address);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set DMA peripheral base address
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
DMAx(x=0, 1)	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>address</b>	peripheral base address
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
#define BANK0_WRITE_START_ADDR ((uint32_t)0x08004000)

dma_periph_address_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, BANK0_WRITE_START_ADDR);
```

## dma\_memory\_address\_config

The description of dma\_memory\_address\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-182. Function dma\_memory\_address\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_memory_address_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_memory_address_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t address);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set DMA memory base address
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral



<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>address</b>	memory base address
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
uint8_t g_destbuf[TRANSFER_NUM];
```

```
dma_memory_address_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, (uint32_t) g_destbuf);
```

## **dma\_transfer\_number\_config**

The description of dma\_transfer\_number\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-183. Function dma\_transfer\_number\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_transfer_number_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_transfer_number_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t number);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>number</b>	data transfer number
<i>0-0xffff</i>	number
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
#define TRANSFER_NUM
```

```
0x400
```

```
dma_transfer_number_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, TRANSFER_NUM);
```

## dma\_transfer\_number\_get

The description of dma\_transfer\_number\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-184. Function dma\_transfer\_number\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_transfer_number_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint32_t dma_transfer_number_get(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint32_t</b>	0-0xffff

Example:

```
uint32_t number = 0;
```

```
number = dma_transfer_number_get(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## dma\_priority\_config

The description of dma\_priority\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-185. Function dma\_priority\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_priority_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_priority_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t priority);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure priority level of DMA channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection

Input parameter{in}	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>priority</b>	priority Level of this channel
<i>DMA_PRIORITY_LOW</i>	low priority
<i>DMA_PRIORITY_MEDIUM</i>	medium priority
<i>DMA_PRIORITY_HIGH</i>	high priority
<i>DMA_PRIORITY_ULTRA_HIGH</i>	ultra high priority
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_priority_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_PRIORITY_ULTRA_HIGH);
```

## dma\_memory\_width\_config

The description of dma\_memory\_width\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-186. Function dma\_memory\_width\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_memory_width_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_memory_width_config (uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t mwidth);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure transfer data size of memory
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>mwidth</b>	transfer data width of memory
<i>DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_8BIT</i>	transfer data width of memory is 8-bit
<i>DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_16BIT</i>	transfer data width of memory is 16-bit

<i>DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_32BIT</i>	transfer data width of memory is 32-bit
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_memory_width_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_8BIT);
```

### dma\_periph\_width\_config

The description of dma\_periph\_width\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-187. Function dma\_periph\_width\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_periph_width_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_periph_width_config (uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t pwidth);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure transfer data size of peripheral
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pwidth</b>	transfer data width of peripheral
<i>DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_8BIT</i>	transfer data width of peripheral is 8-bit
<i>DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_16BIT</i>	transfer data width of peripheral is 16-bit
<i>DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_32BIT</i>	transfer data width of peripheral is 32-bit
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_periph_width_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_8BIT);
```

## dma\_memory\_increase\_enable

The description of dma\_memory\_increase\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-188. Function dma\_memory\_increase\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_memory_increase_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_memory_increase_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable next address increasement algorithm of memory
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_memory_increase_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## dma\_memory\_increase\_disable

The description of dma\_memory\_increase\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-189. Function dma\_memory\_increase\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_memory_increase_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_memory_increase_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable next address increasement algorithm of memory
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_memory_increase_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## dma\_periph\_increase\_enable

The description of dma\_periph\_increase\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-190. Function dma\_periph\_increase\_enable**

Function name	dma_periph_increase_enable
Function prototype	void dma_periph_increase_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_periph_increase_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## dma\_periph\_increase\_disable

The description of dma\_periph\_increase\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-191. Function dma\_periph\_increase\_disable**

Function name	dma_periph_increase_disable
Function prototype	void dma_periph_increase_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_periph_increase_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

## **dma\_transfer\_direction\_config**

The description of dma\_transfer\_direction\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-192. Function dma\_transfer\_direction\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_transfer_direction_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_transfer_direction_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t direction);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the direction of data transfer on the channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>direction</b>	specify the direction of data transfer
<i>DMA_PERIPHERAL_TO_MEMORY</i>	read from peripheral and write to memory
<i>DMA_MEMORY_TO_PERIPHERAL</i>	read from memory and write to peripheral
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_transfer_direction_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_PERIPHERAL_TO_MEMORY);
```

## **dma\_flag\_get**

The description of dma\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-193. Function dma\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus dma_flag_get(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	check DMA flag is set or not
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	specify get which flag
<i>DMA_FLAG_G</i>	global interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_FTF</i>	full transfer finish flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_HTF</i>	half transfer finish flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_ERR</i>	error flag of channel
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
FlagStatus flag = RESET;
```

```
flag = dma_flag_get(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_FLAG_FTF);
```

## **dma\_flag\_clear**

The description of dma\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-194. Function dma\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_flag_clear(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);



<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear the flag of a DMA channel
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	specify get which flag
<i>DMA_FLAG_G</i>	global interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_FTF</i>	full transfer finish flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_HTF</i>	half transfer finish flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_ERR</i>	error flag of channel
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_flag_clear(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_FLAG_FTF);
```

### dma\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of dma\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-195. Function dma\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus dma_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	check DMA flag and interrupt enable bit is set or not
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

flag	specify get which flag
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF</i>	full transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_HTF</i>	half transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_ERR</i>	error interrupt flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
if(dma_interrupt_flag_get(DMA0, DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF)){
    dma_interrupt_flag_clear(DMA0, DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_G);
}
```

### **dma\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

The description of dma\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-196. Function dma\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

Function name	dma_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void dma_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear the interrupt flag of a DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>flag</b>	specify get which flag
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_G</i>	global interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF</i>	full transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_HTF</i>	half transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_ERR</i>	error interrupt flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
if(dma_interrupt_flag_get(DMA0, DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF)){
    dma_interrupt_flag_clear(DMA0, DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_G);
}
```

## **dma\_interrupt\_enable**

The description of dma\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-197. Function dma\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_interrupt_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t source);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable DMA interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>source</b>	DMA interrupt source
<i>DMA_INT_FTF</i>	full transfer finish interrupt of channel
<i>DMA_INT_HTF</i>	half transfer finish interrupt of channel
<i>DMA_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt of channel
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA0 channel0 interrupt configuration */
```

```
dma_interrupt_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_INT_FTF);
```

## **dma\_interrupt\_disable**

The description of dma\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-198. Function dma\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	dma_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void dma_interrupt_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t source);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable DMA interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_periph</b>	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0, 1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channelx</b>	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>source</b>	DMA interrupt source
<i>DMA_INT_FTF</i>	full transfer finish interrupt of channel
<i>DMA_INT_HTF</i>	half transfer finish interrupt of channel
<i>DMA_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt of channel
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA0 channel0 interrupt configuration */
```

```
dma_interrupt_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_INT_FTF);
```

## 3.10. EXMC

The external memory controller EXMC, is used as a translator for MCU to access a variety of external memory. The EXMC registers are listed in chapter [3.10.1](#), the EXMC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.10.2](#).

### 3.10.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

EXMC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-199. EXMC Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
EXMC_SNCTL	SRAM/NOR Flash control registers
EXMC_SNTCFG	SRAM/NOR Flash timing configuration registers
EXMC_SNWTCFG	SRAM/NOR Flash write timing configuration registers

## 3.10.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

EXMC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-200. EXMC firmware function**

Function name	Function description
exmc_norsram_deinit	deinitialize EXMC NOR/SRAM bank
exmc_norsram_init	initialize EXMC NOR/SRAM bank
exmc_norsram_struct_para_init	initialize the struct exmc_norsram_parameter_struct
exmc_norsram_enable	enable EXMC NOR/PSRAM bank
exmc_norsram_disable	disable EXMC NOR/PSRAM bank
exmc_norsram_page_size_config	configure CRAM page size

### Structure exmc\_norsram\_timing\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-201. Structure exmc\_norsram\_timing\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
asyn_access_mode	asynchronous access mode
syn_data_latency	configure the data latency
syn_clk_division	configure the clock divide ratio
bus_latency	configure the bus latency
asyn_data_setup_time	configure the data setup time, asynchronous access mode valid
asyn_address_hold_time	configure the address hold time, asynchronous access mode valid
asyn_address_setup_time	configure the data setup time, asynchronous access mode valid

### Structure exmc\_norsram\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-202. Structure exmc\_norsram\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
write_mode	the write mode, synchronous mode or asynchronous mode
extended_mode	enable or disable the extended mode
asyn_wait	enable or disable the asynchronous wait function
nwait_signal	enable or disable the NWAIT signal while in synchronous bust mode
memory_write	enable or disable the write operation
nwait_config	NWAIT signal configuration
wrap_burst_mode	enable or disable the wrap burst mode
nwait_polarity	specifies the polarity of NWAIT signal from memory
burst_mode	enable or disable the burst mode
databus_width	specifies the databus width of external memory
memory_type	specifies the type of external memory
address_data_mux	specifies whether the data bus and address bus are multiplexed

read_write_timing	timing parameters for read and write if the extended mode is not used or the timing parameters for read if the extended mode is used
write_timing	timing parameters for write when the extended mode is used

## exmc\_norsram\_deinit

The description of exmc\_norsram\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-203. Function exmc\_norsram\_deinit**

<b>Function name</b>	exmc_norsram_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exmc_norsram_deinit(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	deinitialize EXMC NOR/SRAM bank
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize EXMC NOR/SRAM bank */
exmc_norsram_deinit();
```

## exmc\_norsram\_init

The description of exmc\_norsram\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-204. Function exmc\_norsram\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	exmc_norsram_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exmc_norsram_init(exmc_norsram_parameter_struct* exmc_norsram_init_struct);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize EXMC NOR/SRAM bank
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
exmc_norsram_init_struct	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-202. Structure exmc_norsram_parameter_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize EXMC NOR/SRAM bank */

exmc_norsram_parameter_struct lcd_init_struct;

exmc_norsram_timing_parameter_struct lcd_timing_init_struct;

/* configure timing parameter */

lcd_timing_init_struct.asyn_access_mode = EXMC_ACCESS_MODE_A;

lcd_timing_init_struct.syn_data_latency = EXMC_DATA_LAT_2_CLK;

lcd_timing_init_struct.syn_clk_division = EXMC_SYN_CLOCK_RATIO_DISABLE;

lcd_timing_init_struct.bus_latency = 1;

lcd_timing_init_struct.asyn_data_setup_time = 5;

lcd_timing_init_struct.asyn_address_hold_time = 2;

lcd_timing_init_struct.asyn_address_setup_time = 2;

/* configure EXMC bus parameters */

lcd_init_struct.write_mode = EXMC_ASYNC_WRITE;

lcd_init_struct.extended_mode = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.asyn_wait = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.nwait_signal = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.memory_write = ENABLE;

lcd_init_struct.nwait_config = EXMC_NWAIT_CONFIG_BEFORE;

lcd_init_struct.wrap_burst_mode = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.nwait_polarity = EXMC_NWAIT_POLARITY_LOW;

lcd_init_struct.burst_mode = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.databus_width = EXMC_NOR_DATABUS_WIDTH_16B;

lcd_init_struct.memory_type = EXMC_MEMORY_TYPE_SRAM;

lcd_init_struct.address_data_mux = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.read_write_timing = &lcd_timing_init_struct;

lcd_init_struct.write_timing = &lcd_timing_init_struct;

exmc_norsram_init(&lcd_init_struct);
```

### **exmc\_norsram\_struct\_para\_init**

The description of `exmc_norsram_struct_para_init` is shown as below:

**Table 3-205. Function exmc\_norsram\_struct\_para\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	exmc_norsram_struct_para_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exmc_norsram_struct_para_init(exmc_norsram_parameter_struct* exmc_norsram_init_struct);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize the struct exmc_norsram_parameter_struct
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>exmc_norsram_init_struct</b>	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-202. Structure exmc_norsram_parameter_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the struct nor_init_struct */
exmc_norsram_parameter_struct nor_init_struct;
exmc_norsram_struct_para_init (&nor_init_struct);
```

## exmc\_norsram\_enable

The description of exmc\_norsram\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-206. Function exmc\_norsram\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	exmc_norsram_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exmc_norsram_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable EXMC NOR/PSRAM bank
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable bank */
exmc_norsram_enable();
```



## exmc\_norsram\_disable

The description of exmc\_norsram\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-207. Function exmc\_norsram\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	exmc_norsram_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exmc_norsram_disable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable EXMC NOR/PSRAM bank
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable bank */
exmc_norsram_disable();
```

## exmc\_norsram\_page\_size\_config

The description of exmc\_norsram\_page\_size\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-208. Function exmc\_norsram\_page\_size\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	exmc_norsram_page_size_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exmc_norsram_page_size_config(uint32_t page_size);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure CRAM page size
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>page_size</b>	CRAM page size
EXMC_CRAM_AUTO_SPLIT	the clock is generated only during synchronous access
EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_128_BYTES	page size is 128 bytes
EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_256_BYTES	page size is 256 bytes
EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_512_BYTES	page size is 512 bytes
EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_1024_BYTES	page size is 1024 bytes
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CRAM page size */
```

```
exmc_norsram_page_size_config (EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_128_BYTES);
```

## 3.11. EXTI

EXTI is the interrupt / event controller in the MCU. It contains up to 19 independent edge detectors and generates interrupt requests or events to the processor. The EXTI registers are listed in chapter [3.11.1](#), the EXTI firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.11.2](#).

### 3.11.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

EXTI registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-209. EXTI Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
EXTI_INTEN	interrupt enable register
EXTI_EVEN	event enable register
EXTI_RTEN	rising edge trigger enable register
EXTI_FTEN	falling edge trigger enable register
EXTI_SWIEV	software interrupt event register
EXTI_PD	pending register

### 3.11.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

EXTI firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-210. EXTI firmware function**

Function name	Function description
exti_deinit	deinitialize the EXTI
exti_init	initialize the EXTI line x
exti_interrupt_enable	enable the interrupts from EXTI line x
exti_interrupt_disable	disable the interrupts from EXTI line x
exti_event_enable	enable the events from EXTI line x
exti_event_disable	disable the events from EXTI line x
exti_software_interrupt_enable	enable the software interrupt event from EXTI line x
exti_software_interrupt_disable	disable the software interrupt event from EXTI line x
exti_flag_get	get EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
exti_flag_clear	clear EXTI line x interrupt pending flag

Function name	Function description
exti_interrupt_flag_get	get EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
exti_interrupt_flag_clear	clear EXTI line x interrupt pending flag

## Enum exti\_line\_enum

**Table 3-211. Enum exti\_line\_enum**

Member name	Function description
EXTI_0	EXTI line 0
EXTI_1	EXTI line 1
EXTI_2	EXTI line 2
EXTI_3	EXTI line 3
EXTI_4	EXTI line 4
EXTI_5	EXTI line 5
EXTI_6	EXTI line 6
EXTI_7	EXTI line 7
EXTI_8	EXTI line 8
EXTI_9	EXTI line 9
EXTI_10	EXTI line 10
EXTI_11	EXTI line 11
EXTI_12	EXTI line 12
EXTI_13	EXTI line 13
EXTI_14	EXTI line 14
EXTI_15	EXTI line 15
EXTI_16	EXTI line 16
EXTI_17	EXTI line 17
EXTI_18	EXTI line 18

## Enum exti\_mode\_enum

**Table 3-212. Enum exti\_mode\_enum**

Member name	Function description
EXTI_INTERRUPT	EXTI interrupt mode
EXTI_EVENT	EXTI event mode

## Enum exti\_trig\_type\_enum

**Table 3-213. Enum exti\_trig\_type\_enum**

Member name	Function description
EXTI_TRIG_RISING	EXTI rising edge trigger
EXTI_TRIG_FALLING	EXTI falling edge trigger
EXTI_TRIG_BOTH	EXTI rising and falling edge trigger
EXTI_TRIG_NONE	EXTI without rising or falling edge trigger

## exti\_deinit

The description of exti\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-214. Function exti\_deinit**

Function name	exti_deinit
Function prototype	void exti_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the EXTI
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize the EXTI */
exti_deinit();
```

## exti\_init

The description of exti\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-215. Function exti\_init**

Function name	exti_init
Function prototype	void exti_init(exti_line_enum linex, exti_mode_enum mode, exti_trig_type_enum trig_type);
Function descriptions	initialize the EXTI line x
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
Input parameter{in}	
mode	EXTI mode, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-212. Enum exti_mode_enum</a>
Input parameter{in}	
trig_type	trigger type, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-213. Enum exti_trig_type_enum</a>
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure EXTI_0 */
```

```
exti_init(EXTI_0, EXTI_INTERRUPT, EXTI_TRIG_BOTH);
```

## exti\_interrupt\_enable

The description of exti\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-216. Function exti\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exti_interrupt_enable(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the interrupts from EXTI line x
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the interrupts from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_interrupt_enable(EXTI_0);
```

## exti\_interrupt\_disable

The description of exti\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-217. Function exti\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exti_interrupt_disable(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the interrupts from EXTI line x
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the interrupts from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_interrupt_disable(EXTI_0);
```

## exti\_event\_enable

The description of exti\_event\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-218. Function exti\_event\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_event_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exti_event_enable(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the events from EXTI line x
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the events from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_event_enable(EXTI_0);
```

## exti\_event\_disable

The description of exti\_event\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-219. Function exti\_event\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_event_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exti_event_disable(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the events from EXTI line x
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the events from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_event_disable(EXTI_0);
```

## exti\_software\_interrupt\_enable

The description of exti\_software\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-220. Function exti\_software\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_software_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exti_software_interrupt_enable(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the software interrupt event from EXTI line x
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable EXTI line 0 software interrupt */
exti_software_interrupt_enable(EXTI_0);
```

## exti\_software\_interrupt\_disable

The description of exti\_software\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-221. Function exti\_software\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_software_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exti_software_interrupt_disable(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the software interrupt event from EXTI line x
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable EXTI line 0 software interrupt */
exti_software_interrupt_disable(EXTI_0);
```

## exti\_flag\_get

The description of exti\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-222. Function exti\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus exti_flag_get(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get EXTI line 0 flag status */
FlagStatus state = exti_flag_get(EXTI_0);
```

## exti\_flag\_clear

The description of exti\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-223. Function exti\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exti_flag_clear(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear EXTI line 0 flag status */
exti_flag_clear(EXTI_0);
```



## exti\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of exti\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-224. Function exti\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus exti_interrupt_flag_get(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get EXTI line 0 interrupt flag status */
FlagStatus state = exti_interrupt_flag_get(EXTI_0);
```

## exti\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of exti\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-225. Function exti\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	exti_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void exti_interrupt_flag_clear(exti_line_enum linex);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>linex</b>	EXTI line x, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-211. Enum exti_line_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear EXTI line 0 interrupt flag status */
exti_interrupt_flag_clear(EXTI_0);
```

## 3.12. FMC

There is flash controller and option byte for GD32C11x series. The FMC registers are listed in chapter [3.12.1](#) the FMC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.12.2](#).

### 3.12.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

FMC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-226. FMC Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
FMC_WS	Wait state register
FMC_KEY	Unlock key register
FMC_OBKEY	Option byte unlock key register
FMC_STAT	Status register
FMC_CTL	Control register
FMC_ADDR	Address register
FMC_OBSTAT	Option byte status register
FMC_WP	Erase/Program Protection register
FMC_PID	Product ID register

### 3.12.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

FMC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-227. FMC firmware function**

Function name	Function description
fmc_wsctl_set	set the FMC wait state counter
fmc_prefetch_enable	enable pre-fetch
fmc_prefetch_disable	disable pre-fetch
fmc_ibus_enable	enable IBUS cache
fmc_ibus_disable	disable IBUS cache
fmc_dbus_enable	enable DBUS cache
fmc_dbus_disable	disable DBUS cache
fmc_ibus_reset	reset IBUS cache
fmc_dbus_reset	reset DBUS cache
fmc_program_width_set	set program width to flash memory
fmc_unlock	unlock the main FMC operation
fmc_lock	lock the main FMC operation
fmc_page_erase	FMC erase page
fmc_mass_erase	FMC erase whole chip
fmc_doubleword_program	FMC program a double word at the corresponding address
fmc_word_program	FMC program a word at the corresponding address

Function name	Function description
ob_unlock	unlock the option byte operation
ob_lock	lock the option byte operation
ob_erase	erase the option byte
ob_write_protection_enable	enable write protection
ob_security_protection_config	configure the option byte security protection
ob_user_write	write the FMC user option byte
ob_data_program	program option bytes data
ob_user_get	get the FMC user option byte
ob_data_get	get OB_DATA in register FMC_OBSTAT
ob_write_protection_get	get the FMC option byte write protection
ob_security_protection_flag_get	get option byte security protection state
fmc_interrupt_enable	enable FMC interrupt
fmc_interrupt_disable	disable FMC interrupt
fmc_flag_get	check flag is set or not
fmc_flag_clear	clear the FMC flag
fmc_interrupt_flag_get	get FMC interrupt flag state
fmc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear FMC interrupt flag state
fmc_state_get	get FMC state
fmc_ready_wait	check FMC ready or not

## Enum fmc\_state\_enum

**Table 3-228. Enum fmc\_state\_enum**

enum name	enum description
FMC_READY	the operation has been completed
FMC_BUSY	the operation is in progress
FMC_PGERR	program error
FMC_PGAERR	program alignment error
FMC_WPERR	erase/program protection error
FMC_TOERR	timeout error

## fmc\_wscnt\_set

The description of fmc\_wscnt\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-229. Function fmc\_wscnt\_set**

Function name	fmc_wscnt_set
Function prototype	void fmc_wscnt_set(uint32_t wscnt);
Function descriptions	set the wait state counter value
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
wscnt	wait state counter value

<i>FMC_WAIT_STATE_0</i>	FMC 0 wait
<i>FMC_WAIT_STATE_1</i>	FMC 1 wait
<i>FMC_WAIT_STATE_2</i>	FMC 2 wait
<i>FMC_WAIT_STATE_3</i>	FMC 3 wait
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the wait state counter value */
fmc_wsnt_set (FMC_WAIT_STATE_1);
```

## **fmc\_prefetch\_enable**

The description of fmc\_prefetch\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-230. Function fmc\_prefetch\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_prefetch_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fmc_prefetch_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable pre-fetch
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable pre-fetch */
fmc_prefetch_enable( );
```

## **fmc\_prefetch\_disable**

The description of fmc\_prefetch\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-231. Function fmc\_prefetch\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_prefetch_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fmc_prefetch_disable (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable pre-fetch
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable pre-fetch */
fmc_prefetch_disable( );
```

## fmc\_ibus\_enable

The description of fmc\_ibus\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-232. Function fmc\_ibus\_enable**

Function name	fmc_ibus_enable
Function prototype	void fmc_ibus_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable IBUS cache
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable IBUS cache */
fmc_ibus_enable( );
```

## fmc\_ibus\_disable

The description of fmc\_ibus\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-233. Function fmc\_ibus\_disable**

Function name	fmc_ibus_disable
Function prototype	void fmc_ibus_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable IBUS cache
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable IBUS cache */
```

```
fmc_ibus_disable( );
```

## fmc\_dbus\_enable

The description of fmc\_dbus\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-234. Function fmc\_dbus\_enable**

Function name	fmc_dbus_enable
Function prototype	void fmc_dbus_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable DBUS cache
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DBUS cache */
```

```
fmc_dbus_enable( );
```

## fmc\_dbus\_disable

The description of fmc\_dbus\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-235. Function fmc\_dbus\_disable**

Function name	fmc_dbus_disable
Function prototype	void fmc_dbus_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable DBUS cache
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DBUS cache */
```

```
fmc_dbus_disable( );
```

## fmc\_ibus\_reset

The description of fmc\_ibus\_reset is shown as below:

**Table 3-236. Function fmc\_ibus\_reset**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_ibus_reset
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fmc_ibus_reset (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reset IBUS cache
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset IBUS cache */
```

```
fmc_ibus_reset( );
```

## fmc\_dbus\_reset

The description of fmc\_dbus\_reset is shown as below:

**Table 3-237. Function fmc\_dbus\_reset**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_dbus_reset
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fmc_dbus_reset(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reset DBUS cache
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset DBUS cache */

fmc_dbus_reset( );
```

## fmc\_program\_width\_set

The description of fmc\_program\_width\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-238. Function fmc\_program\_width\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_program_width_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fmc_program_width_set(uint32_t pgw);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set program width to flash memory
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pgw</b>	program width
FMC_PROG_W_32B	32-bit program width to flash memory
FMC_PROG_W_64B	64-bit program width to flash memory
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set program width to flash memory */

fmc_program_width_set(FMC_PROG_W_32B);
```

## fmc\_unlock

The description of fmc\_unlock is shown as below:

**Table 3-239. Function fmc\_unlock**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_unlock
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fmc_unlock (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	unlock the main FMC operation
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-



Example:

```
/* unlock the main FMC operation */
```

```
fmc_unlock ( );
```

## fmc\_lock

The description of fmc\_lock is shown as below:

**Table 3-240. Function fmc\_lock**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_lock
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fmc_lock(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	lock the main FMC operation
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock the main FMC operation */
```

```
fmc_lock( );
```

## fmc\_page\_erase

The description of fmc\_page\_erase is shown as below:

**Table 3-241. Function fmc\_page\_erase**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_page_erase
<b>Function prototype</b>	fmc_state_enum fmc_page_erase(uint32_t page_address);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	erase page
<b>Precondition</b>	fmc_unlock
<b>The called functions</b>	fmc_ready_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>page_address</b>	the page address to be erased
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>fmc_state_enum</b>	<a href="#"><u>state of FMC</u></a>

Example:

```
/* erase page */
```

```
fmc_page_erase ( 0x08004000);
```

## fmc\_mass\_erase

The description of fmc\_mass\_erase is shown as below:

**Table 3-242. Function fmc\_mass\_erase**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_mass_erase
<b>Function prototype</b>	fmc_state_enum fmc_mass_erase(void );
<b>Function descriptions</b>	erase whole chip
<b>Precondition</b>	fmc_unlock
<b>The called functions</b>	fmc_ready_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
fmc_state_enum	<a href="#">state of FMC</a>

Example:

```
/* erase whole chip */
```

```
fmc_mass_erase ( );
```

## fmc\_doubleword\_program

The description of fmc\_doubleword\_program is shown as below:

**Table 3-243. Function fmc\_doubleword\_program**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_doubleword_program
<b>Function prototype</b>	fmc_state_enum fmc_doubleword_program(uint32_t address, uint64_t data);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	program a double word at the corresponding address
<b>Precondition</b>	fmc_unlock
<b>The called functions</b>	fmc_ready_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>address</b>	the address to program
<b>data</b>	the data to program
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
fmc_state_enum	<a href="#">state of FMC</a>

Example:

```
/* program a double word at the corresponding address */
```

```
fmc_doubleword_program( 0x08004000,0xaabbccddeeffgghh);
```

## fmc\_word\_program

The description of fmc\_word\_program is shown as below:

**Table 3-244. Function fmc\_word\_program**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_word_program
<b>Function prototype</b>	fmc_state_enum fmc_word_program(uint32_t address, uint32_t data);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	program a word at the corresponding address
<b>Precondition</b>	fmc_unlock
<b>The called functions</b>	fmc_ready_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>address</b>	the address to program
<b>data</b>	the data to program
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
fmc_state_enum	<a href="#">state of FMC</a>

Example:

```
/* program a word at the corresponding address */
```

```
fmc_word_program ( 0x08004000,0xaabbccdd);
```

## ob\_unlock

The description of ob\_unlock is shown as below:

**Table 3-245. Function ob\_unlock**

<b>Function name</b>	ob_unlock
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ob_unlock(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	unlock the option byte operation
<b>Precondition</b>	fmc_unlock
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* unlock the option byte operation */
```

ob\_unlock( );

## ob\_lock

The description of ob\_lock is shown as below:

**Table 3-246. Function ob\_lock**

<b>Function name</b>	ob_lock
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ob_lock(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	lock the option byte operation
<b>Precondition</b>	fmc_lock
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock the option byte operation */
```

```
ob_lock( );
```

## ob\_erase

The description of ob\_erase is shown as below:

**Table 3-247. Function ob\_erase**

<b>Function name</b>	ob_erase
<b>Function prototype</b>	void ob_erase(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	erase the FMC option byte
<b>Precondition</b>	ob_unlock
<b>The called functions</b>	fmc_ready_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* erase the FMC option byte */
```

```
ob_erase ( );
```

## ob\_write\_protection\_enable

The description of ob\_write\_protection\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-248. Function ob\_write\_protection\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	ob_write_protection_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	fmc_state_enum ob_write_protection_enable(uint32_t ob_wp);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable write protection
<b>Precondition</b>	ob_unlock
<b>The called functions</b>	fmc_ready_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ob_wp</b>	enable write protection
<i>OB_WP_x</i>	write protect specify sector x
<i>OB_WP_ALL</i>	write protect all sector
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>fmc_state_enum</b>	<a href="#"><i>state of FMC</i></a>

Example:

```
/* enable write protection */
```

```
ob_write_protection_enable (OB_WP_7);
```

## ob\_security\_protection\_config

The description of ob\_security\_protection\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-249. Function ob\_security\_protection\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	ob_security_protection_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	fmc_state_enum ob_security_protection_config (uint8_t ob_spc);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure security protection
<b>Precondition</b>	ob_unlock
<b>The called functions</b>	fmc_ready_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ob_spc</b>	specify security protection
<i>FMC_NSPC</i>	no security protection
<i>FMC_USPC</i>	under security protection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>fmc_state_enum</b>	<a href="#"><i>state of FMC</i></a>

Example:

```
/* enable security protection */
```

ob\_security\_protection\_config (FMC\_USPC);

## ob\_user\_write

The description of ob\_user\_write is shown as below:

**Table 3-250. Function ob\_user\_write**

<b>Function name</b>	ob_user_write
<b>Function prototype</b>	fmc_state_enum ob_user_write(uint8_t ob_fwdgt, uint8_t ob_deepsleep, uint8_t ob_stdby);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	program the FMC user option byte
<b>Precondition</b>	ob_unlock
<b>The called functions</b>	fmc_ready_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ob_fwdgt</b>	option byte watchdog value
OB_FWDGT_SW	software free watchdog
OB_FWDGT_HW	hardware free watchdog
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ob_deepsleep</b>	option byte deepsleep reset value
OB_DEEPSLEEP_NRS T	no reset when entering deepsleep mode
OB_DEEPSLEEP_RST	generate a reset instead of entering deepsleep mode
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ob_stdby</b>	option byte standby reset value
OB_STDBY_NRST	no reset when entering standby mode
OB_STDBY_RST	generate a reset instead of entering standby mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
fmc_state_enum	<a href="#">state of FMC</a>

Example:

```
/* configure user option byte */
```

```
ob_user_write(OB_FWDGT_HW, OB_DEEPSLEEP_RST, OB_STDBY_RST);
```

## ob\_data\_program

The description of ob\_data\_program is shown as below:

**Table 3-251. Function ob\_data\_program**

<b>Function name</b>	ob_data_program
<b>Function prototype</b>	fmc_state_enum ob_data_program(uint32_t address, uint8_t data);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	program option bytes data
<b>Precondition</b>	ob_unlock

<b>The called functions</b>	fmc_ready_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>address</b>	the option bytes address to be programmed
<b>data</b>	the byte to be programmed
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>fmc_state_enum</b>	<a href="#"><u>state of FMC</u></a>

Example:

```
/* program option bytes data */
ob_data_program (0x1fff804, 0x56);
```

## ob\_user\_get

The description of ob\_user\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-252. Function ob\_user\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	ob_user_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t ob_user_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get the FMC user option byte
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint8_t</b>	the FMC user option byte values(0xF0 – 0xFF)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC user option byte */
uint8_t user = ob_user_get ( );
```

## ob\_data\_get

The description of ob\_data\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-253. Function ob\_data\_program**

<b>Function name</b>	ob_data_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	Uint16_t ob_data_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get the FMC data option byte
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
Uint16_t	the FMC data option byte values(0x0 – 0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC data option byte */
```

```
Uint16_t data = ob_data_get ( );
```

## ob\_write\_protection\_get

The description of ob\_write\_protection\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-254. Function ob\_write\_protection\_get**

Function name	ob_write_protection_get
Function prototype	uint32_t ob_write_protection_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC option byte write protection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	the FMC write protection option byte value(0x0 – 0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC option byte write protection */
```

```
uint32_t wp = ob_write_protection_get ( );
```

## ob\_security\_protection\_flag\_get

The description of ob\_security\_protection\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-255. Function ob\_security\_protection\_flag\_get**

Function name	ob_security_protection_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus ob_security_protection_flag_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC option byte security protection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-



Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the FMC option byte security protection */
```

```
FlagStatus spc = ob_security_protection_flag_get( );
```

## fmc\_interrupt\_enable

The description of fmc\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-256. Function fmc\_interrupt\_enable**

Function name	fmc_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void fmc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable FMC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the FMC interrupt source
FMC_INT_END	FMC end of program interrupt
FMC_INT_ERR	FMC error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable FMC interrupt */
```

```
fmc_interrupt_enable(FMC_INT_END);
```

## fmc\_interrupt\_disable

The description of fmc\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-257. Function fmc\_interrupt\_disable**

Function name	fmc_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void fmc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable FMC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the FMC interrupt source

<i>FMC_INT_END</i>	FMC end of program interrupt
<i>FMC_INT_ERR</i>	FMC error interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable FMC interrupt */
```

```
fmc_interrupt_disable(FMC_INT_END);
```

## fmc\_flag\_get

The description of fmc\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-258. Function fmc\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus fmc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	check flag is set or not
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	check FMC flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_BUSY</i>	FMC busy flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGERR</i>	FMC operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGAERR</i>	FMC program alignment error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_WPERR</i>	FMC erase/program protection error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_END</i>	FMC end of operation flag bit
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get FMC flag */
```

```
FlagStatus flag = fmc_flag_get(FMC_FLAG_END);
```

## fmc\_flag\_clear

The description of fmc\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-259. Function fmc\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fmc_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear the FMC flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	clear FMC flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGERR</i>	FMC operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGAERR</i>	FMC program alignment error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_WPERR</i>	FMC erase/program protection error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_END</i>	FMC end of operation flag bit
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* get FMC flag */
```

```
fmc_flag_clear(FMC_FLAG_END);
```

### fmc\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of fmc\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-260. Function fmc\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus fmc_interrupt_flag_get(fmc_interrupt_flag_enum flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get FMC interrupt flag state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	FMC flag
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_PGE RR</i>	FMC operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_PGA ERR</i>	FMC program alignment error flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_WPE RR</i>	FMC erase/program protection error flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_END</i>	FMC end of operation flag bit
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get FMC flag */
```

```
FlagStatus flag = fmc_interrupt_flag_get (FMC_INT_FLAG_PGERR);
```

## fmc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of fmc\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-261. Function fmc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus fmc_interrupt_flag_clear (fmc_interrupt_flag_enum flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear FMC interrupt flag state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	clear FMC flag
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_PGE</i> <i>RR</i>	FMC operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_PGA</i> <i>ERR</i>	FMC program alignment error flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_WPE</i> <i>RR</i>	FMC erase/program protection error flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_END</i>	FMC end of operation flag bit
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear FMC flag */
```

```
fmc_interrupt_flag_get (FMC_INT_FLAG_PGERR);
```

## fmc\_state\_get

The description of fmc\_state\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-262. Function fmc\_state\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	fmc_state_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	fmc_state_enum fmc_state_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get the FMC state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	

-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	<a href="#">state of FMC</a>

Example:

```
/* get the FMC state */
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_state_get( );
```

## fmc\_ready\_wait

The description of fmc\_ready\_wait is shown as below:

**Table 3-263. Function fmc\_ready\_wait**

Function name	fmc_ready_wait
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_ready_wait(uint32_t timeout);
Function descriptions	check whether FMC is ready or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	fmc_state_get()
Input parameter{in}	
timeout	count of loop
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	<a href="#">state of FMC</a>

Example:

```
/* check whether FMC is ready or not */
```

```
fmc_ready_wait (0x00001000 );
```

## 3.13. FWDGT

The free watchdog timer (FWDGT) is a hardware timing circuitry that can be used to detect system failures due to software malfunctions. It's suitable for the situation that requires an independent environment and lower timing accuracy. The FWDGT registers are listed in chapter [3.13.1](#) the FWDGT firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.13.2](#).

### 3.13.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

FWDGT registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-264. FWDGT Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
FWDGT_CTL	Control register

Registers	Descriptions
FWDGT_PSC	Prescaler register
FWDGT_RLD	Reload register
FWDGT_STAT	Status register

## 3.13.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

FWDGT firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-265. FWDGT firmware function**

Function name	Function description
<code>fwdgt_write_enable</code>	enable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD
<code>fwdgt_write_disable</code>	disable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD
<code>fwdgt_enable</code>	start the free watchdog timer counter
<code>fwdgt_prescaler_value_config</code>	configure the free watchdog timer counter prescaler value
<code>fwdgt_reload_value_config</code>	configure the free watchdog timer counter reload value
<code>fwdgt_counter_reload</code>	reload the counter of FWDGT
<code>fwdgt_config</code>	configure counter reload value, and prescaler divider value
<code>fwdgt_flag_get</code>	get flag state of FWDGT

### `fwdgt_write_enable`

The description of `fwdgt_write_enable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-266. Function `fwdgt_write_enable`**

Function name	<code>fwdgt_write_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void fwdgt_write_enable(void);</code>
Function descriptions	enable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD */
fwdgt_write_enable ( );
```

### `fwdgt_write_disable`

The description of `fwdgt_write_disable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-267. Function fwdgt\_write\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	fwdgt_write_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fwdgt_write_disable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD */
fwdgt_write_disable ( );
```

## fwdgt\_enable

The description of fwdgt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-268. Function fwdgt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	fwdgt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fwdgt_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	start the free watchdog timer counter
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* start the free watchdog timer counter */
fwdgt_enable ( );
```

## fwdgt\_prescaler\_value\_config

The description of fwdgt\_prescaler\_value\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-269. Function fwdgt\_prescaler\_value\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	fwdgt_prescaler_value_config
----------------------	------------------------------

<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus fwdgt_prescaler_value_config(uint16_t prescaler_value);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the free watchdog timer counter prescaler value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>prescaler_value</b>	specify prescaler value
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV4</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 4
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV8</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 8
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV16</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 16
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV32</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 32
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV64</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 64
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV128</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 128
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV256</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 256
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	ERROR / SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* set FWDGT prescaler to 256 */
```

```
ErrStatus flag;
```

```
flag = fwdgt_prescaler_value_config (FWDGT_PSC_DIV256);
```

## **fwdgt\_reload\_value\_config**

The description of fwdgt\_reload\_value\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-270. Function fwdgt\_reload\_value\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	fwdgt_reload_value_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus fwdgt_reload_value_config(uint16_t reload_value);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the free watchdog timer counter reload value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>reload_value</b>	reload_value: specify window value(0x0000 - 0x0FFF)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	ERROR / SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* set FWDGT reload value to 0x0FFF */
```

```
ErrStatus flag;
```

```
flag = fwdgt_reload_value_config (0x0FFF);
```



## fwdgt\_counter\_reload

The description of fwdgt\_counter\_reload is shown as below:

**Table 3-271. Function fwdgt\_counter\_reload**

<b>Function name</b>	fwdgt_counter_reload
<b>Function prototype</b>	void fwdgt_counter_reload(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reload the counter of FWDGT
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reload FWDGT counter */
```

```
fwdgt_counter_reload ( );
```

## fwdgt\_config

The description of fwdgt\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-272. Function fwdgt\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	fwdgt_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus fwdgt_config(uint16_t reload_value, uint8_t prescaler_div);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure counter reload value, and prescaler divider value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>reload_value</b>	specify reload value(0x0000 - 0x0FFF)-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>prescaler_div</b>	FWDGT prescaler value-
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV4</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 4
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV8</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 8
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV16</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 16
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV32</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 32
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV64</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 64
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV128</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 128
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV256</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 256
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-

Return value	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* configure FWDGT counter clock: 40KHz(IRC40K) / 64 = 0.625 KHz */
```

```
fwdgt_config(2*500, FWDGT_PSC_DIV64);
```

## fwdgt\_flag\_get

The description of fwdgt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-273. Function fwdgt\_flag\_get fwdgt\_write\_disable**

Function name	fwdgt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus fwdgt_flag_get(uint16_t flag);
Function descriptions	get flag state of FWDGT
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	flag to get
<i>FWDGT_FLAG_PUD</i>	a write operation to FWDGT_PSC register is on going
<i>FWDGT_FLAG_RUD</i>	a write operation to FWDGT_RLD register is on going
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* test if a prescaler value update is on going */
```

```
FlagStatus status;
```

```
status = fwdgt_flag_get (FWDGT_FLAG_PUD);
```

```
if(status == RESET)
```

```
{
```

```
...
```

```
}else
```

```
{
```

```
...
```

```
}
```

## 3.14. GPIO

GPIO is used to implement logic input/output functions for the devices. The GPIO registers are listed in chapter [3.13.1](#), the GPIO firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.13.2](#).

### 3.14.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

GPIO registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-274. GPIO Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
GPIOx_CTL0	Port control register 0
GPIOx_CTL1	Port control register 1
GPIOx_ISTAT	Port input status register
GPIOx_OCTL	Port output control register
GPIOx_BOP	Port bit operate register
GPIOx_BC	Port bit clear register
GPIOx_LOCK	Port configuration lock register
GPIOx_SPD	Port bit speed register
AFIO_EC	Event control register
AFIO_PCF0	AFIO port configuration register 0
AFIO_EXTISS0	EXTI sources selection register 0
AFIO_EXTISS1	EXTI sources selection register 1
AFIO_EXTISS2	EXTI sources selection register 2
AFIO_EXTISS3	EXTI sources selection register 3
AFIO_PCF1	AFIO port configuration register 1
AFIO_CPSCTL	IO compensation control register

### 3.14.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

GPIO firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-275. GPIO firmware function**

Function name	Function description
gpio_deinit	reset GPIO port
gpio_afio_deinit	reset alternate function I/O(AFIO)
gpio_init	GPIO parameter initialization
gpio_bit_set	set GPIO pin
gpio_bit_reset	reset GPIO pin
gpio_bit_write	write data to the specified GPIO pin
gpio_port_write	write data to the specified GPIO port
gpio_input_bit_get	get GPIO pin input status
gpio_input_port_get	get GPIO port input status

Function name	Function description
gpio_output_bit_get	get GPIO pin output status
gpio_output_port_get	get GPIO port output status
gpio_pin_remap_config	configure GPIO pin remap
gpio_exti_source_select	select GPIO pin exti sources
gpio_event_output_config	configure GPIO pin event output
gpio_event_output_enable	enable GPIO pin event output
gpio_event_output_disable	disable GPIO pin event output
gpio_pin_lock	lock GPIO pin
gpio_compensation_config	configure the I/O compensation cell
gpio_compensation_flag_get	check the I/O compensation cell is ready or not

## gpio\_deinit

The description of gpio\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-276. Function gpio\_deinit**

Function name	gpio_deinit
Function prototype	void gpio_deinit(uint32_t gpio_periph);
Function descriptions	reset GPIO port
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset GPIOA */
gpio_deinit (GPIOA);
```

## gpio\_afio\_deinit

The description of gpio\_afio\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-277. Function gpio\_afio\_deinit**

Function name	gpio_afio_deinit
Function prototype	void gpio_afio_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset alternate function I/O(AFIO)
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset alternate function */
```

```
gpio_afio_deinit();
```

## gpio\_init

The description of gpio\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-278. Function gpio\_init**

Function name	gpio_init
Function prototype	void gpio_init(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t mode, uint32_t speed, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	GPIO parameter initialization
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
Input parameter{in}	
<b>gpio_mode</b>	gpio pin mode
<i>GPIO_MODE_AIN</i>	analog input mode
<i>GPIO_MODE_IN_FLOATING</i>	floating input mode
<i>GPIO_MODE_IPD</i>	pull-down input mode
<i>GPIO_MODE_IPU</i>	pull-up input mode
<i>GPIO_MODE_OUT_OD</i>	GPIO output with open-drain
<i>GPIO_MODE_OUT_PP</i>	GPIO output with push-pull
<i>GPIO_MODE_AF_OD</i>	AFIO output with open-drain
<i>GPIO_MODE_AF_PP</i>	AFIO output with push-pull
Input parameter{in}	
<b>speed</b>	gpio output max speed value
<i>GPIO_OSPEED_10MHZ</i>	output max speed 10MHz
<i>GPIO_OSPEED_2MHZ</i>	output max speed 2MHz
<i>GPIO_OSPEED_50MHZ</i>	output max speed 50MHz

<i>Z</i>	
<i>GPIO_OSPEED_MAX</i>	output max speed more than 50MHz
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pin</b>	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config PA0 as analog input mode */
```

```
gpio_init (GPIOA, GPIO_MODE_AIN, GPIO_OSPEED_50MHZ, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

## gpio\_bit\_set

The description of gpio\_bit\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-279. Function gpio\_bit\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_bit_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void gpio_bit_set(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set GPIO pin
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pin</b>	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set PA0 */
```

```
gpio_bit_set (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

## gpio\_bit\_reset

The description of gpio\_bit\_reset is shown as below:

**Table 3-280. Function gpio\_bit\_reset**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_bit_reset
<b>Function prototype</b>	void gpio_bit_reset(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reset GPIO pin
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pin</b>	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset PA0 */
```

```
gpio_bit_set (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

## gpio\_bit\_write

The description of gpio\_bit\_write is shown as below:

**Table 3-281. Function gpio\_bit\_write**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_bit_write
<b>Function prototype</b>	void gpio_bit_write(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin,bit_status bit_value);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	write data to the specified GPIO pin
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pin</b>	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>bit_value</b>	SET or RESET
<i>RESET</i>	clear the port pin
<i>SET</i>	set the port pin
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write 1 to PA0 */
```

```
gpio_bit_write (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0, SET);
```

## gpio\_port\_write

The description of gpio\_port\_write is shown as below:

**Table 3-282. Function gpio\_port\_write**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_port_write
<b>Function prototype</b>	void gpio_port_write(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint16_t data);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	write data to the specified GPIO port
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>data</b>	specify the value to be written to the port output data register
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/*write 1010 0101 to Port A */
```

```
gpio_port_write (GPIOA, 0xA5);
```

## gpio\_input\_bit\_get

The description of gpio\_input\_bit\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-283. Function gpio\_input\_bit\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_input_bit_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus gpio_input_bit_get(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get GPIO pin input status



<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pin</b>	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* get status of PA0 */
```

```
FlagStatus bit_state;
```

```
bit_state = gpio_input_bit_get (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

## gpio\_input\_port\_get

The description of gpio\_input\_port\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-284. Function gpio\_input\_port\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_input_port_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t gpio_input_port_get(uint32_t gpio_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get GPIO port input status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint16_t</b>	0x00-0xFF

Example:

```
/* get input value of Port A */
```

```
uint16_t port_state;
```

```
port_state = gpio_input_bit_get (GPIOA);
```

## gpio\_output\_bit\_get

The description of gpio\_output\_bit\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-285. Function gpio\_output\_bit\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_output_bit_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus gpio_output_bit_get(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get GPIO pin output status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pin</b>	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* get output status of PA0 */
```

```
FlagStatus bit_state;
```

```
bit_state = gpio_output_bit_get (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

## gpio\_output\_port\_get

The description of gpio\_output\_port\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-286. Function gpio\_output\_port\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_output_port_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t gpio_output_port_get(uint32_t gpio_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get GPIO port output status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

<b>Uint16_t</b>	0x00-0xFF
-----------------	-----------

Example:

```
/* get output value of Port A */

uint16_t port_state;

port_state = gpio_output_port_get (GPIOA);
```

## gpio\_pin\_remap\_config

The description of gpio\_pin\_remap\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-287. Function gpio\_pin\_remap\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_pin_remap_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void gpio_pin_remap_config(uint32_t remap, ControlStatus newvalue);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure GPIO pin remap
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_remap</b>	select the pin to remap
GPIO_SPI0_REMAP	SPI0 remapping
GPIO_I2C0_REMAP	I2C0 remapping
GPIO_USART0_REMAP	USART0 remapping
GPIO_USART1_REMAP	USART1 remapping
GPIO_USART2_PARTIAL_REMAP	USART2 partial remapping
GPIO_USART2_FULL_REMAP	USART2 full remapping
GPIO_TIMER0_PARTIAL_REMAP	TIMER0 partial remapping
GPIO_TIMER0_FULL_REMAP	TIMER0 full remapping
GPIO_TIMER1_PARTIAL_REMAP1	TIMER1 partial remapping
GPIO_TIMER1_PARTIAL_REMAP2	TIMER1 partial remapping
GPIO_TIMER1_FULL_REMAP	TIMER1 full remapping
GPIO_TIMER2_PARTIAL_REMAP	TIMER2 partial remapping
GPIO_TIMER2_FULL_REMAP	TIMER2 full remapping

<i>GPIO_TIMER3_REMAP</i>	TIMER3 remapping
<i>GPIO_CAN0_PARTIAL_REMAP</i>	CAN0 partial remapping
<i>GPIO_CAN0_FULL_REMAP</i>	CAN0 full remapping
<i>GPIO_PD01_REMAP</i>	PD01 remapping
<i>GPIO_ADC0_ETRGRTR_REMAP</i>	ADC0 external trigger routine conversion remapping
<i>GPIO_ADC1_ETRGRTR_REMAP</i>	ADC1 external trigger routine conversion remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER4CH3_IREMAP</i>	TIMER4 channel3 internal remapping
<i>GPIO_CAN1_REMAP</i>	CAN1 remapping
<i>GPIO_SWJ_NONJTRST_REMAP</i>	full SWJ(JTAG-DP + SW-DP),but without NJTRST
<i>GPIO_SWJ_SWDPENABLE_REMAP</i>	JTAG-DP disabled and SW-DP enabled
<i>GPIO_SWJ_DISABLE_REMAP</i>	JTAG-DP disabled and SW-DP disabled
<i>GPIO_SPI2_REMAP</i>	SPI2 remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER1ITR0_REMAP</i>	TIMER1 internal trigger 0 remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER8_REMAP</i>	TIMER8 remapping
<i>GPIO_EXMC_NADV_REMAP</i>	EXMC_NADV connect/disconnect
<i>GPIO_CTC_REMAP0</i>	CTC remapping(PD15)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>newvalue</b>	ENABLE / DISABLE
<i>ENABLE</i>	
<i>DISABLE</i>	
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/*enable SPI0 remapping */
```

```
gpio_pin_remap_config (GPIO_SPI0_REMAP, ENABLE);
```

## gpio\_exti\_source\_select

The description of gpio\_exti\_source\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-288. Function gpio\_exti\_source\_select**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_exti_source_select
<b>Function prototype</b>	void gpio_exti_source_select(uint8_t output_port, uint8_t output_pin);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	select GPIO pin exti sources
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_outputport</b>	gpio event output port
<b>GPIO_PORT_SOURCE_GPIOx</b>	output port source (x= A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_outputpin</b>	gpio event output pin
<b>GPIO_PIN_SOURCE_x</b>	Pin number(x=0..15)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config PA0 as EXTI source */
```

```
gpio_exti_source_select (GPIO_PORT_SOURCE_GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_SOURCE_0);
```

## gpio\_event\_output\_config

The description of gpio\_event\_output\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-289. Function gpio\_event\_output\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_event_output_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void gpio_event_output_config(uint8_t output_port, uint8_t output_pin);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure GPIO pin event output
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_outputport</b>	gpio event output port
<b>GPIO_EVENT_PORT_GPIOx</b>	event output port x (x= A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_outputpin</b>	gpio event output pin
<b>GPIO_EVENT_PIN_x</b>	Pin number (x=0..15)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* Config PA0 as the output of event */
```

```
gpio_event_output_config (GPIO_EVENT_PORT_GPIOA, GPIO_EVENT_PIN_0);
```

## gpio\_event\_output\_enable

The description of gpio\_event\_output\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-290. Function gpio\_event\_output\_enable**

Function name	gpio_event_output_enable
Function prototype	void gpio_event_output_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable GPIO pin event output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable GPIO pin event output */
```

```
gpio_event_output_enable(void);
```

## gpio\_event\_output\_disable

The description of gpio\_event\_output\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-291. Function gpio\_event\_output\_disable**

Function name	gpio_event_output_disable
Function prototype	void gpio_event_output_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable GPIO pin event output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* disable GPIO pin event output */

gpio_event_output_disable(void);
```

## gpio\_pin\_lock

The description of gpio\_pin\_lock is shown as below:

**Table 3-292. Function gpio\_pin\_lock**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_pin_lock
<b>Function prototype</b>	void gpio_pin_lock(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	lock GPIO pin
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gpio_periph</b>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,E)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pin</b>	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock PA0 */

gpio_pin_lock (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

## gpio\_compensation\_config

The description of gpio\_compensation\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-293. Function gpio\_compensation\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	gpio_compensation_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void gpio_compensation_config(uint32_t compensation);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the I/O compensation cell
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>compensation</b>	specifies the I/O compensation cell mode

<code>GPIO_COMPENSATION_ENABLE</code>	I/O compensation cell is enabled
<code>GPIO_COMPENSATION_DISABLE</code>	I/O compensation cell is disabled
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enabled I/O compensation cell */
```

```
gpio_compensation_config (GPIO_COMPENSATION_ENABLE);
```

## gpio\_compensation\_flag\_get

The description of `gpio_compensation_flag_get` is shown as below:

**Table 3-294. Function `gpio_compensation_flag_get`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>gpio_compensation_flag_get</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>FlagStatus gpio_compensation_flag_get(void);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	check the I/O compensation cell is ready or not
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* check the I/O compensation cell state */
```

```
FlagStatus cell_state;
```

```
cell_state = gpio_compensation_flag_get (void);
```

## 3.15. I2C

The I2C (inter-integrated circuit) module provides an I2C interface which is an industry standard two-line serial interface for MCU to communicate with external I2C interface. The I2C registers are listed in chapter [3.15.1](#), the I2C firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.15.2](#)



## 3.15.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

I2C registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-295. I2C Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
I2C_CTL0	Control register 0
I2C_CTL1	Control register 1
I2C_SADDR0	Slave address register 0
I2C_SADDR1	Slave address register 1
I2C_DATA	Transfer buffer register
I2C_STAT0	Transfer status register 0
I2C_STAT1	Transfer status register 1
I2C_CKCFG	Clock configure register
I2C_RT	Rise time register
I2C_SAMCS	SAM control and status register
I2C_FMPCFG	Fast mode plus configure register

## 3.15.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

I2C firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-296. I2C firmware function**

Function name	Function description
i2c_deinit	reset I2C
i2c_clock_config	configure I2C clock
i2c_mode_addr_config	configure I2C address
i2c_smbus_type_config	select SMBus type
i2c_ack_config	whether or not to send an ACK
i2c_ackpos_config	configure I2C POAP position
i2c_master_addressing	master sends slave address
i2c_dualaddr_enable	enable dual-address mode
i2c_dualaddr_disable	disable dual-address mode
i2c_enable	enable I2C
i2c_disable	disable I2C
i2c_start_on_bus	generate a START condition on I2C bus
i2c_stop_on_bus	generate a STOP condition on I2C bus
i2c_data_transmit	I2C transmit data function
i2c_data_receive	I2C receive data function
i2c_dma_config	configure I2C DMA mode
i2c_dma_last_transfer_config	configure whether next DMA EOT is DMA last transfer or not
i2c_stretch_scl_low_config	whether to stretch SCL low when data is not ready in slave mode

Function name	Function description
i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config	whether or not to response to a general call
i2c_software_reset_config	configure software reset of I2C
i2c_pec_config	configure I2C PEC calculation
i2c_pec_transfer_config	configure whether to transfer PEC value
i2c_pec_value_get	get packet error checking value
i2c_smbus_alert_config	configure I2C alert through SMBA pin
i2c_smbus_arp_config	configure I2C ARP protocol in SMBus
i2c_sam_enable	enable SAM_V interface
i2c_sam_disable	disable SAM_V interface
i2c_sam_timeout_enable	enable SAM_V interface timeout detect
i2c_sam_timeout_disable	disable SAM_V interface timeout detect
i2c_flag_get	get I2C flag status
i2c_flag_clear	clear I2C flag status
i2c_interrupt_enable	enable I2C interrupt
i2c_interrupt_disable	disable I2C interrupt
i2c_interrupt_flag_get	get I2C interrupt flag status
i2c_interrupt_flag_clear	clear I2C interrupt flag status

## Enum i2c\_flag\_enum

Table 3-297. Enum i2c\_flag\_enum

Member name	Function description
I2C_FLAG_SBSEND	start condition sent out in master mode
I2C_FLAG_ADDSEND	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode
I2C_FLAG_BTC	byte transmission finishes
I2C_FLAG_ADD10SEND	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode
I2C_FLAG_STPDET	stop condition detected in slave mode
I2C_FLAG_RBNE	I2C_DATA is not empty during receiving
I2C_FLAG_TBE	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting
I2C_FLAG_BERR	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus
I2C_FLAG_LOSTARB	arbitration lost in master mode
I2C_FLAG_AERR	acknowledge error
I2C_FLAG_OUERR	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode
I2C_FLAG_PECERR	PEC error when receiving data
I2C_FLAG_SMBTO	timeout signal in SMBus mode
I2C_FLAG_SMBALT	SMBus alert status
I2C_FLAG_MASTER	a flag indicating whether I2C block is in master or slave mode
I2C_FLAG_I2CBSY	busy flag
I2C_FLAG_TR	whether the I2C is a transmitter or a receiver
I2C_FLAG_RXGC	general call address (00h) received

Member name	Function description
I2C_FLAG_DEFSMB	default address of SMBus device
I2C_FLAG_HSTSMB	SMBus host header detected in slave mode
I2C_FLAG_DUMOD	dual flag in slave mode indicating which address is matched in dual-address mode
I2C_FLAG_TFF	txframe fall flag
I2C_FLAG_TFR	txframe rise flag
I2C_FLAG_RFF	rxframe fall flag
I2C_FLAG_RFR	rxframe rise flag

## Enum i2c\_interrupt\_flag\_enum

**Table 3-298. Enum i2c\_interrupt\_flag\_enum**

Member name	Function description
I2C_INT_FLAG_SBSEND	start condition sent out in master mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_ADDSEND	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_BTC	byte transmission finishes interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_ADD10SEND	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_STPDET	stop condition detected in slave mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_RBNE	I2C_DATA is not empty during receiving interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_TBE	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_BERR	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_LOSTARB	arbitration lost in master mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR	acknowledge error interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_OUERR	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_PECERR	PEC error when receiving data interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBTO	timeout signal in SMBus mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBALT	SMBus alert status interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_TFF	txframe fall interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_TFR	txframe rise interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_RFF	rxframe fall interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_RFR	rxframe rise interrupt flag

## Enum i2c\_interrupt\_enum

**Table 3-299. Enum i2c\_interrupt\_enum**

Member name	Function description
I2C_INT_ERR	error interrupt
I2C_INT_EV	event interrupt
I2C_INT_BUF	buffer interrupt
I2C_INT_TFF	txframe fall interrupt

Member name	Function description
I2C_INT_TFR	txframe rise interrupt
I2C_INT_RFF	rxframe fall interrupt
I2C_INT_RFR	rxframe rise interrupt

## i2c\_deinit

The description of i2c\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-300. Function i2c\_deinit**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_deinit(uint32_t i2c_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reset I2C
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset I2C0 */
```

```
i2c_deinit (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_clock\_config

The description of i2c\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-301. Function i2c\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_clock_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t clk speed, uint32_t duty cyc);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure I2C clock
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_clock_freq_get
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>clk speed</b>	i2c clock speed
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>dutycyc</b>	duty cycle in fast mode
<i>I2C_DTCY_2</i>	T_low/T_high=2
<i>I2C_DTCY_16_9</i>	T_low/T_high=16/9
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure I2C0 clock speed as 100KHz */
```

```
i2c_clock_config(I2C0, 100000, I2C_DTCY_2);
```

## i2c\_mode\_addr\_config

The description of i2c\_mode\_addr\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-302. Function i2c\_mode\_addr\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_mode_addr_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_mode_addr_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t mode, uint32_t addformat, uint32_t addr);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure I2C address
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mode</b>	I2C mode select
<i>I2C_I2CMODE_ENABLER</i>	I2C mode
<i>I2C_SMBUSMODE_ENABLED</i>	SMBus mode
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>addformat</b>	7bits or 10bits
<i>I2C_ADDFORMAT_7BITS</i>	address format is 7 bits
<i>I2C_ADDFORMAT_10BITS</i>	address format is 10 bits
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>addr</b>	I2C address
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* configure I2C0 address as 0x82, using 7 bits */
```

```
i2c_mode_addr_config(I2C0, I2C_I2CMODE_ENABLE, I2C_ADDFORMAT_7BITS, 0x82);
```

## i2c\_smbus\_type\_config

The description of i2c\_smbus\_type\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-303. Function i2c\_smbus\_type\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_smbus_type_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_smbus_type_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t type);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	select SMBus type
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>type</b>	Device or host
<i>I2C_SMBUS_DEVICE</i>	SMBus mode device type
<i>I2C_SMBUS_HOST</i>	SMBus mode host type
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config I2C0 as SMBUS host type*/
```

```
i2c_smbus_type_config (I2C0, I2C_SMBUS_HOST);
```

## i2c\_ack\_config

The description of i2c\_ack\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-304. Function i2c\_ack\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_ack_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_ack_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t ack);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	whether or not to send an ACK
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral

<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ack</b>	whether or not to send an ACK
<i>I2C_ACK_ENABLE</i>	ACK will be sent
<i>I2C_ACK_DISABLE</i>	ACK will not be sent
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 will send ACK */
```

```
i2c_ack_config (I2C0, I2C_ACK_ENABLE);
```

## i2c\_ackpos\_config

The description of i2c\_ackpos\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-305. Function i2c\_ackpos\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_ackpos_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_ackpos_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t pos);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure I2C POAP position
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pos</b>	ACK position
<i>I2C_ACKPOS_CURRENT</i>	ACKEN bit decides whether or not to send ACK or not for the current byte
<i>I2C_ACKPOS_NEXT</i>	ACKEN bit decides whether or not to send ACK for the next byte
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* The ACK of I2C0 is send for the current frame */
```

```
i2c_ackpos_config (I2C0, I2C_ACKPOS_CURRENT);
```

## i2c\_master\_addressing

The description of i2c\_master\_addressing is shown as below:

**Table 3-306. Function i2c\_master\_addressing**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_master_addressing
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_master_addressing(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t addr, uint32_t trandirection);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	master sends slave address
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>addr</b>	slave address
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>trandirection</b>	transmitter or receiver
<i>I2C_TRANSMITTER</i>	transmitter
<i>I2C_RECEIVER</i>	receiver
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* send slave address to I2C bus and I2C0 act as receiver */
```

```
i2c_master_addressing(I2C0, 0x82, I2C_RECEIVER);
```

## i2c\_dualaddr\_enable

The description of i2c\_dualaddr\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-307. Function i2c\_dualaddr\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_dualaddr_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_dualaddr_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t addr)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable dual-address mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>addr</b>	second address in dual-address mode



Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 dual-address*/
```

```
i2c_dualaddr_enable (I2C0, 0x80);
```

## i2c\_dualaddr\_disable

The description of i2c\_dualaddr\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-308. Function i2c\_dualaddr\_disable**

Function name	i2c_dualaddr_disable
Function prototype	void i2c_dualaddr_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph)
Function descriptions	disable dual-address mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 dual-address */
```

```
i2c_dualaddr_disable (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_enable

The description of i2c\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-309. Function i2c\_enable**

Function name	i2c_enable
Function prototype	void i2c_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	enable I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 */
i2c_enable (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_disable

The description of i2c\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-310. Function i2c\_disable**

Function name	i2c_disable
Function prototype	void i2c_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	disable I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 */
i2c_disable (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_start\_on\_bus

The description of i2c\_start\_on\_bus is shown as below:

**Table 3-311. Function i2c\_start\_on\_bus**

Function name	i2c_start_on_bus
Function prototype	void i2c_start_on_bus(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	generate a START condition on I2C bus
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 send a start condition to I2C bus */
```

```
i2c_start_on_bus (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_stop\_on\_bus

The description of i2c\_stop\_on\_bus is shown as below:

**Table 3-312. Function i2c\_stop\_on\_bus**

Function name	i2c_stop_on_bus
Function prototype	void i2c_stop_on_bus(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	generate a STOP condition on I2C bus
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 generate a STOP condition to I2C bus */
```

```
i2c_stop_on_bus (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_data\_transmit

The description of i2c\_data\_transmit is shown as below:

**Table 3-313. Function i2c\_data\_transmit**

Function name	i2c_data_transmit
Function prototype	void i2c_data_transmit(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint8_t data);
Function descriptions	I2C transmit data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)

Input parameter{in}	
data	transmit data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 transmit data */
```

```
i2c_data_transmit (I2C0, 0x80);
```

## i2c\_data\_receive

The description of i2c\_data\_receive is shown as below:

**Table 3-314. Function i2c\_data\_receive**

Function name	i2c_data_receive
Function prototype	uint8_t i2c_data_receive(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	I2C receive data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0x00..0xFF

Example:

```
/* I2C0 receive data */
```

```
uint8_t i2c_receiver;
```

```
i2c_receiver = i2c_data_receive(I2C0);
```

## i2c\_dma\_config

The description of i2c\_dma\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-315. Function i2c\_dma\_config**

Function name	i2c_dma_config
Function prototype	void i2c_dma_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t dmastate);
Function descriptions	configure I2C DMA mode
Precondition	-

<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dmastate</b>	on or off
<i>I2C_DMA_ON</i>	enable DMA mode
<i>I2C_DMA_OFF</i>	disable DMA mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 DMA mode enable */
```

```
i2c_dma_config (I2C0, I2C_DMA_ON);
```

## **i2c\_dma\_last\_transfer\_config**

The description of i2c\_dma\_last\_transfer\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-316. Function i2c\_dma\_last\_transfer\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_dma_last_transfer_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_dma_last_transfer_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t dmalast);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure whether next DMA EOT is DMA last transfer or not
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dmalast</b>	next DMA EOT is the last transfer or not
<i>I2C_DMALST_ON</i>	next DMA EOT is the last transfer
<i>I2C_DMALST_OFF</i>	next DMA EOT is not the last transfer
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* next DMA EOT is the last transfer */
```

```
i2c_dma_last_transfer_config (I2C0, I2C_DMALST_ON);
```

## i2c\_stretch\_scl\_low\_config

The description of i2c\_stretch\_scl\_low\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-317. Function i2c\_stretch\_scl\_low\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_stretch_scl_low_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_stretch_scl_low_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t stretchpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	whether to stretch SCL low when data is not ready in slave mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>stretchpara</b>	SCL stretching enable or disable
<i>I2C_SCLSTRETCH_ENABLE</i>	enable SCL stretching
<i>I2C_SCLSTRETCH_DISABLE</i>	disable SCL stretching
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* stretch SCL low when data is not ready in slave mode */
```

```
i2c_stretch_scl_low_config (I2C0, I2C_SCLSTRETCH_ENABLE);
```

## i2c\_slave\_response\_to\_gcall\_config

The description of i2c\_slave\_response\_to\_gcall\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-318. Function i2c\_slave\_response\_to\_gcall\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t gcallpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	whether or not to response to a general call
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gcallpara</b>	response to a general call or not

<i>I2C_GCEN_ENABLE</i>	slave will response to a general call
<i>I2C_GCEN_DISABLE</i>	slave will not response to a general call
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 will response to a general call */
```

```
i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config (I2C0, I2C_GCEN_ENABLE);
```

## i2c\_software\_reset\_config

The description of i2c\_software\_reset\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-319. Function i2c\_software\_reset\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_software_reset_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_software_reset_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t sreset);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure software reset of I2C
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>sreset</b>	reset or not
<i>I2C_SRESET_SET</i>	I2C is under reset
<i>I2C_SRESET_RESET</i>	I2C is not under reset
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* software reset I2C0 */
```

```
i2c_software_reset_config (I2C0, I2C_SRESET_SET);
```

## i2c\_pec\_config

The description of i2c\_pec\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-320. Function i2c\_pec\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_pec_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_pec_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t pecstate);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure I2C PEC calculation or not
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pecstate</b>	on or off
<i>I2C_PEC_ENABLE</i>	PEC calculation on
<i>I2C_PEC_DISABLE</i>	PEC calculation off
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* Enable I2C PEC calculation */
```

```
i2c_pec_config (I2C0, I2C_PEC_ENABLE);
```

## i2c\_pec\_transfer\_config

The description of i2c\_pec\_transfer\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-321. Function i2c\_pec\_transfer\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_pec_transfer_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_pec_transfer_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t pecpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure whether to transfer PEC value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pecpara</b>	Transfer PEC or not
<i>I2C_PECTRANS_ENABLE</i>	transfer PEC
<i>I2C_PECTRANS_DISABLE</i>	not transfer PEC
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:



```
/* I2C0 transfer PEC */
```

```
i2c_pec_transfer_config (I2C0, I2C_PECTRANS_ENABLE);
```

## i2c\_pec\_value\_get

The description of i2c\_pec\_value\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-322. Function i2c\_pec\_value\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_pec_value_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint8_t i2c_pec_value_get(uint32_t i2c_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get packet error checking value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint8_t</b>	PEC value

Example:

```
/* I2C0 get packet error checking value */
```

```
uint8_t pec_value;
```

```
pec_value = i2c_pec_value_get (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_smbus\_alert\_config

The description of i2c\_smbus\_alert\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-323. Function i2c\_smbus\_alert\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_smbus_alert_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_smbus_alert_config (uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t smbuspara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure I2C alert through SMBA pin
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>smbuspara</b>	issue alert through SMBA pin or not
<i>I2C_SALTSEND_ENAB LE</i>	issue alert through SMBA pin

<i>I2C_SALTSEND_DISA</i> <i>BLE</i>	not issue alert through SMBA pin
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 issue alert through SMBA pin enable*/
```

```
i2c_smbus_alert_config (I2C0, I2C_SALTSEND_ENABLE);
```

## i2c\_smbus\_arp\_config

The description of i2c\_smbus\_arp\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-324. Function i2c\_smbus\_arp\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_smbus_arp_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_smbus_arp_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t arpstate);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure I2C ARP protocol in SMBus
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>arpstate</b>	ARP protocol in SMBus switch
<i>I2C_ARP_ENABLE</i>	enable ARP
<i>I2C_ARP_DISABLE</i>	disable ARP
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 ARP protocol in SMBus switch */
```

```
i2c_smbus_arp_config (I2C0, I2C_ARP_ENABLE);
```

## i2c\_sam\_enable

The description of i2c\_sam\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-325. Function i2c\_sam\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_sam_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_sam_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable SAM_V interface
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 SAM_V interface */
```

```
i2c_sam_enable (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_sam\_disable

The description of i2c\_sam\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-326. Function i2c\_sam\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_sam_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_sam_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable SAM_V interface
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 SAM_V interface */
```

```
i2c_sam_disable (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_sam\_timeout\_enable

The description of i2c\_sam\_timeout\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-327. Function i2c\_sam\_timeout\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_sam_timeout_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_sam_timeout_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable SAM_V interface timeout detect
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 SAM_V interface timeout detect */
```

```
i2c_sam_timeout_enable (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_sam\_timeout\_disable

The description of i2c\_sam\_timeout\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-328. Function i2c\_sam\_timeout\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_sam_timeout_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_sam_timeout_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable SAM_V interface timeout detect
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 SAM_V interface timeout detect */
```

```
i2c_sam_timeout_disable (I2C0);
```

## i2c\_flag\_get

The description of i2c\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-329. Function i2c\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus i2c_flag_get(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_flag_enum flag)

<b>Function descriptions</b>	check I2C flag is set or not
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	specify get which flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_SBSEND</i>	start condition sent out in master mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_ADDSEND</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_BTC</i>	byte transmission finishes
<i>I2C_FLAG_ADD10SEND</i>	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_STPDET</i>	stop condition detected in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_RBNE</i>	I2C_DATA is not empty during receiving
<i>I2C_FLAG_TBE</i>	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting
<i>I2C_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus
<i>I2C_FLAG_LOSTARB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error
<i>I2C_FLAG_OUERR</i>	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_PECERR</i>	PEC error when receiving data
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBTO</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBALT</i>	SMBus alert status
<i>I2C_FLAG_MASTER</i>	a flag indicating whether I2C block is in master or slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_I2CBSY</i>	busy flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_TR</i>	whether the I2C is a transmitter or a receiver
<i>I2C_FLAG_RXGC</i>	general call address (00h) received
<i>I2C_FLAG_DEFSMB</i>	default address of SMBus device
<i>I2C_FLAG_HSTSMB</i>	SMBus host header detected in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_DUMOD</i>	dual flag in slave mode indicating which address is matched in dual-address mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_TFF</i>	txframe fall flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_TFR</i>	txframe rise flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_RFF</i>	rxframe fall flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_RFR</i>	rxframe rise flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET / RESET

Example:

/\* check whether start condition send out \*/

```
FlagStatus flag_state = RESET;
```

```
flag_state = i2c_flag_get (I2C0, I2C_FLAG_SBSEND);
```

## i2c\_flag\_clear

The description of i2c\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-330. Function i2c\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_flag_clear(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_flag_enum flag)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear I2C flag status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	flag type
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBALT</i>	SMBus Alert status
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBTO</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_PECERR</i>	PEC error when receiving data
<i>I2C_FLAG_OUERR</i>	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error
<i>I2C_FLAG_LOSTARB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus
<i>I2C_FLAG_ADDSEND</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_TFF</i>	txframe fall flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_TFR</i>	txframe rise flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_RFF</i>	rxframe fall flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_RFR</i>	rxframe rise flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear a bus error flag*/
```

```
i2c_flag_clear (I2C0, I2C_FLAG_BERR);
```

## i2c\_interrupt\_enable

The description of i2c\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-331. Function i2c\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_interrupt_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_interrupt_enum interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable I2C interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	interrupt type
<i>I2C_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_EV</i>	event interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_BUF</i>	buffer interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_TFF</i>	txframe fall interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_TFR</i>	txframe rise interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_RFF</i>	rxframe fall interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_RFR</i>	rxframe rise interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 event interrupt */
```

```
i2c_interrupt_enable (I2C0, I2C_INT_EV);
```

## i2c\_interrupt\_disable

The description of i2c\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-332. Function i2c\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_interrupt_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_interrupt_enum interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable I2C interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>inttype</b>	interrupt type

<i>I2C_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_EV</i>	event interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_BUF</i>	buffer interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_TFF</i>	txframe fall interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_TFR</i>	txframe rise interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_RFF</i>	rxframe fall interrupt
<i>I2C_INT_RFR</i>	rxframe rise interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 event interrupt */
```

```
i2c_interrupt_disable (I2C0, I2C_INT_EV);
```

## i2c\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of i2c\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-333. Function i2c\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus i2c_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get I2C interrupt flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>int_flag</b>	interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SBSE ND</i>	start condition sent out in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_ADDS END</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_BTC</i>	byte transmission finishes
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_ADD10 SEND</i>	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_STPD ET</i>	stop condition detected in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_RBNE</i>	I2C_DATA is not empty during receiving interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_TBE</i>	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting interrupt flag



<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_LOSTARB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_OUER</i> <i>R</i>	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_PECERR</i> <i>RR</i>	PEC error when receiving data interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBT</i> <i>O</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBA</i> <i>LT</i>	SMBus alert status interrupt flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* check the byte transmission finishes interrupt flag is set or not*/
```

```
FlagStatus flag_state = RESET;
```

```
flag_state = i2c_interrupt_flag_get (I2C0, I2C_INT_FLAG_BTC);
```

## i2c\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of i2c\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-334. Function i2c\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	i2c_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2c_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear I2C interrupt flag status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2c_periph</b>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>int_flag</b>	interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_ADDS</i> <i>END</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus interrupt flag

<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_LOSTARB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_OUER</i>	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_PECERR</i>	PEC error when receiving data interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBTO</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBAL</i>	SMBus Alert status interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_TFF</i>	txframe fall interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_TFR</i>	txframe rise interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_RFF</i>	rxframe fall interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_RFR</i>	rxframe rise interrupt flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the acknowledge error interrupt flag */
```

```
i2c_interrupt_flag_clear (I2C0, I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR);
```

## 3.16. MISC

MISC is a software package that provide the interfaces for NVIC and SysTick. The NVIC and SysTick registers are listed in chapter [3.16.1](#), the MISC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.16.2](#).

### 3.16.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

**Table 3-335. NVIC Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
ISER <sup>(1)</sup>	Interrupt Set Enable Register
ICER <sup>(1)</sup>	Interrupt Clear Enable Register
ISPR <sup>(1)</sup>	Interrupt Set Pending Register
ICPR <sup>(1)</sup>	Interrupt Clear Pending Register
IABR <sup>(1)</sup>	Interrupt Active bit Register
IP <sup>(1)</sup>	Interrupt Priority Register
STIR <sup>(1)</sup>	Software Trigger Interrupt Register
CPUID <sup>(2)</sup>	CPUID Base Register

Registers	Descriptions
ICSR <sup>(2)</sup>	Interrupt Control and State Register
VTOR <sup>(2)</sup>	Vector Table Offset Register
AIRCR <sup>(2)</sup>	Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register
SCR <sup>(2)</sup>	System Control Register
CCR <sup>(2)</sup>	Configuration Control Register
SHP <sup>(2)</sup>	System Handlers Priority Registers
SHCSR <sup>(2)</sup>	System Handler Control and State Register
CFSR <sup>(2)</sup>	Configurable Fault Status Register
HFSR <sup>(2)</sup>	HardFault Status Register
DFSR <sup>(2)</sup>	Debug Fault Status Register
MMFAR <sup>(2)</sup>	MemManage Fault Address Register
BFAR <sup>(2)</sup>	BusFault Address Register
AFSR <sup>(2)</sup>	Auxiliary Fault Status Register
PFR <sup>(2)</sup>	Processor Feature Register
DFR <sup>(2)</sup>	Debug Feature Register
ADR <sup>(2)</sup>	Auxiliary Feature Register
MMFR <sup>(2)</sup>	Memory Model Feature Register
ISAR <sup>(2)</sup>	Instruction Set Attributes Register
CPACR <sup>(2)</sup>	Coprocessor Access Control Register

1. refer to the structure NVIC\_Type, is defined in the core\_cm4h file

2. refer to the structure SCB\_Type, is defined in the core\_cm4. file

**Table 3-336. SysTick Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
CTRL <sup>(1)</sup>	SysTick Control and Status Register
LOAD <sup>(1)</sup>	SysTick Reload Value Register
VAL <sup>(1)</sup>	SysTick Current Value Register
CALIB <sup>(1)</sup>	SysTick Calibration Register

1. refer to the structure SysTick\_Type, is defined in the core\_cm4h file

## 3.16.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

### Enum IRQn\_Type

**Table 3-337. IRQn\_Type**

Member name	Function description
WWDGT_IRQn	WWDGT interrupt
LVD_IRQn	LVD from EXTI interrupt
TAMPER_IRQn	Tamper interrupt
RTC_IRQn	RTC global interrupt
FMC_IRQn	FMC global interrupt
RCU_CTC_IRQn	RCU and CTC interrupts

Member name	Function description
EXTI0_IRQn	EXTI line0 interrupt
EXTI1_IRQn	EXTI line1 interrupt
EXTI2_IRQn	EXTI line2 interrupt
EXTI3_IRQn	EXTI line3 interrupt
EXTI4_IRQn	EXTI line4 interrupt
DMA0_Channel0_IRQn	DMA0 channel0 global interrupt
DMA0_Channel1_IRQn	DMA0 channel1 global interrupt
DMA0_Channel2_IRQn	DMA0 channel2 global interrupt
DMA0_Channel3_IRQn	DMA0 channel3 global interrupt
DMA0_Channel4_IRQn	DMA0 channel4 global interrupt
DMA0_Channel5_IRQn	DMA0 channel5 global interrupt
DMA0_Channel6_IRQn	DMA0 channel6 global interrupt
ADC0_1_IRQn	ADC0 and ADC1 interrupts
CAN0_TX_IRQn	CAN0 TX interrupt
CAN0_RX0_IRQn	CAN0 RX0 interrupt
CAN0_RX1_IRQn	CAN0 RX1 interrupt
CAN0_EWMC_IRQn	CAN0 EWMC interrupt
EXTI5_9_IRQn	EXTI line[9:5] interrupts
TIMER0_BRK_TIMER8_IRQn	TIMER0 break and TIMER8 global interrupts
TIMER0_UP_TIMER9_IRQn	TIMER0 update and TIMER9 global interrupts
TIMER0_TRG_CMT_TIMER10_IRQn	TIMER0 trigger and channel commutation and TIMER10 interrupts
TIMER0_Channel_IRQn	TIMER0 channel capture compare interrupt
TIMER1_IRQn	TIMER1 global interrupt
TIMER2_IRQn	TIMER2 global interrupt
TIMER3_IRQn	TIMER3 global interrupt
I2C0_EV_IRQn	I2C0 event interrupt
I2C0_ER_IRQn	I2C0 error interrupt
I2C1_EV_IRQn	I2C1 event interrupt
I2C1_ER_IRQn	I2C1 error interrupt
SPI0_IRQn	SPI0 global interrupt
SPI1_IRQn	SPI1 global interrupt
USART0_IRQn	USART0 global interrupt
USART1_IRQn	USART1 global interrupt
USART2_IRQn	USART2 global interrupt
EXTI10_15_IRQn	EXTI line[15:10] interrupts
RTC_Alarm_IRQn	RTC alarm from EXTI interrupt
USBFS_WKUP_IRQn	USBFS wakeup from EXTI interrupt
TIMER7_BRK_TIMER11_IRQn	TIMER7 break and TIMER11 global interrupts
TIMER7_UP_TIMER12_IRQn	TIMER7 update and TIMER12 global interrupts

Member name	Function description
TIMER7_TRG_CMT_TIMER13_IRQn	TIMER7 trigger and Channel commutation and TIMER13 global interrupts
TIMER7_Channel_IRQn	TIMER7 channel capture compare interrupt
EXMC_IRQn	EXMC global interrupt
TIMER4_IRQn	TIMER4 global interrupt
SPI2_IRQn	SPI2 global interrupt
UART3_IRQn	UART3 global interrupt
UART4_IRQn	UART4 global interrupt
TIMER5_IRQn	TIMER5 global interrupt
TIMER6_IRQn	TIMER6 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel0_IRQn	DMA1 channel0 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel1_IRQn	DMA1 channel1 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel2_IRQn	DMA1 channel2 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel3_IRQn	DMA1 channel3 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel4_IRQn	DMA1 channel4 global interrupt
CAN1_TX_IRQn	CAN1 TX interrupt
CAN1_RX0_IRQn	CAN1 RX0 interrupt
CAN1_RX1_IRQn	CAN1 RX1 interrupt
CAN1_EWMC_IRQn	CAN1 EWMC interrupt
USBFS_IRQn	USBFS global interrupt

MISC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-338. MISC firmware function**

Function name	Function description
<code>nvic_priority_group_set</code>	set the priority group
<code>nvic_irq_enable</code>	enable NVIC interrupt request
<code>nvic_irq_disable</code>	disable NVIC interrupt request
<code>nvic_vector_table_set</code>	set the NVIC vector table base address
<code>system_lowpower_set</code>	set the state of the low power mode
<code>system_lowpower_reset</code>	reset the state of the low power mode
<code>systick_cksourceset</code>	set the systick clock source

## **nvic\_priority\_group\_set**

The description of `nvic_priority_group_set` is shown as below:

**Table 3-339. Function `nvic_priority_group_set`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>nvic_priority_group_set</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void nvic_priority_group_set(uint32_t nvic_prigroup);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set the priority group
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
<b>nvic_prigroup</b>	priority group
<i>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PRE0_SUB4</i>	0 bits for pre-emption priority, 4 bits for subpriority
<i>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PRE1_SUB3</i>	1 bits for pre-emption priority, 3 bits for subpriority
<i>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PRE2_SUB2</i>	2 bits for pre-emption priority, 2 bits for subpriority
<i>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PRE3_SUB1</i>	3 bits for pre-emption priority, 1 bits for subpriority
<i>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PRE4_SUB0</i>	4 bits for pre-emption priority, 0 bits for subpriority
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* priority group configuration , 0 bits for pre-emption priority, 4 bits for subpriority */
```

```
nvic_priority_group_set(NVIC_PRIGROUP_PRE0_SUB4);
```

## nvic\_irq\_enable

The description of nvic\_irq\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-340. Function nvic\_irq\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	nvic_irq_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void nvic_irq_enable(uint8_t nvic_irq, uint8_t nvic_irq_pre_priority, uint8_t nvic_irq_sub_priority);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable NVIC interrupt request
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	nvic_priority_group_set
Input parameter{in}	
<b>nvic_irq</b>	NVIC interrupt, refer to enum <a href="#">Table 3-337. IRQn_Type</a>
Input parameter{in}	
<b>nvic_irq_pre_priority</b>	the pre-emption priority needed to set
Input parameter{in}	
<b>nvic_irq_sub_priority</b>	the subpriority needed to set
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable window watchDog timer interrupt, pre-emption priority is 1, subpriority is 1 */
nvic_irq_enable(WWDGT_IRQn, 1, 1);
```

## nvic\_irq\_disable

The description of nvic\_irq\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-341. Function nvic\_irq\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	nvic_irq_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void nvic_irq_disable(uint8_t nvic_irq);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable NVIC interrupt request
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>nvic_irq</b>	NVIC interrupt, refer to enum <a href="#">Table 3-337. IRQn_Type</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable window watchDog timer interrupt */
nvic_irq_disable(WWDGT_IRQn);
```

## nvic\_vector\_table\_set

The description of nvic\_vector\_table\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-342. Function nvic\_vector\_table\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	nvic_vector_table_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void nvic_vector_table_set(uint32_t nvic_vect_tab, uint32_t offset);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set the NVIC vector table base address
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>nvic_vect_tab</b>	the RAM or FLASH base address
<i>NVIC_VECTTAB_RAM</i>	RAM base address
<i>NVIC_VECTTAB_FLASH</i>	Flash base address
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>offset</b>	vector table offset (vector table start address= base address+offset)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set vector table address = NVIC_VECTTAB_FLASH +0x200 */
nvic_vector_table_set(NVIC_VECTTAB_FLASH,0x200);
```

## system\_lowpower\_set

The description of system\_lowpower\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-343. Function system\_lowpower\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	system_lowpower_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void system_lowpower_set(uint8_t lowpower_mode);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set the state of the low power mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>lowpower_mode</b>	the low power mode state
SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR	if chose this para, the system always enter low power mode by exiting from ISR
SCB_LPM_DEEPSLEEP	if chose this para, the system will enter the DEEPSLEEP mode
SCB_LPM_WAKE_BY_ALL_INT	if chose this para, the lowpower mode can be woke up by all the enable and disable interrupts
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* the system always enter low power mode by exiting from ISR */
system_lowpower_set(SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR);
```

## system\_lowpower\_reset

The description of system\_lowpower\_reset is shown as below:

**Table 3-344. Function system\_lowpower\_reset**

<b>Function name</b>	system_lowpower_reset
<b>Function prototype</b>	void system_lowpower_reset(uint8_t lowpower_mode);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reset the state of the low power mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>lowpower_mode</b>	the low power mode state
SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR	if chose this para, the system will exit low power mode by exiting from ISR



<i>T_ISR</i>	
<i>SCB_LPM_DEEPSLEEP</i>	if chose this para, the system will enter the SLEEP mode
<i>P</i>	
<i>SCB_LPM_WAKE_BY_</i>	if chose this para, the lowpower mode only can be woke up by the enable
<i>ALL_INT</i>	interrupts
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* the system will exit low power mode by exiting from ISR */
system_lowpower_reset (SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR);
```

## systick\_clksource\_set

The description of systick\_clksource\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-345. Function systick\_clksource\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	systick_clksource_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void systick_clksource_set(uint32_t systick_clksource);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set the systick clock source
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>systick_clksource</b>	the systick clock source needed to choose
<i>SYSTICK_CLKSOURC</i>	systick clock source is from HCLK
<i>E_HCLK</i>	
<i>SYSTICK_CLKSOURC</i>	systick clock source is from HCLK/8
<i>E_HCLK_DIV8</i>	
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* systick clock source is HCLK/8 */
systick_clksource_set (SYSTICK_CLKSOURCE_HCLK_DIV8);
```

## 3.17. PMU

According to the Power management unit (PMU), provides three types of power saving modes, including Sleep, Deep-sleep and Standby mode. The PMU registers are listed in chapter

[3.17.1](#), the PMU firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.17.2](#).

## 3.17.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

PMU registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-346. PMU Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
PMU_CTL	Control register
PMU_CS	Control and status register

## 3.17.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

PMU firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-347. PMU firmware function**

Function name	Function description
pmu_deinit	deinitialize the PMU
pmu_lvd_select	select low voltage detector threshold
pmu_ldo_output_select	select LDO output voltage
pmu_lvd_disable	disable PMU lvd
pmu_to_sleepmode	PMU work at sleep mode
pmu_to_deepsleepmode	PMU work at deepsleep mode
pmu_to_standbymode	pmu work at standby mode
pmu_wakeup_pin_enable	enable wakeup pin
pmu_wakeup_pin_disable	disable wakeup pin
pmu_backup_write_enable	enable backup domain write
pmu_backup_write_disable	disable backup domain write
pmu_flag_get	get flag state
pmu_flag_clear	clear flag bit

### pmu\_deinit

The description of pmu\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-348. Function pmu\_deinit**

Function name	pmu_deinit
Function prototype	void pmu_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the PMU
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset PMU */
```

```
pmu_deinit();
```

## pmu\_lvd\_select

The description of pmu\_lvd\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-349. Function pmu\_lvd\_select**

Function name	pmu_lvd_select
Function prototype	void pmu_lvd_select(uint32_t lvd_n);
Function descriptions	select low voltage detector threshold
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
lvd_n	voltage threshold value
PMU_LVDT_0	voltage threshold is 2.2V
PMU_LVDT_1	voltage threshold is 2.3V
PMU_LVDT_2	voltage threshold is 2.4V
PMU_LVDT_3	voltage threshold is 2.5V
PMU_LVDT_4	voltage threshold is 2.6V
PMU_LVDT_5	voltage threshold is 2.7V
PMU_LVDT_6	voltage threshold is 2.8V
PMU_LVDT_7	voltage threshold is 2.9V
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select low voltage detector threshold as 2.9V */
```

```
pmu_lvd_select(PMU_LVDT_7);
```

## pmu\_ldo\_output\_select

The description of pmu\_ldo\_output\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-350. Function pmu\_ldo\_output\_select**

Function name	pmu_ldo_output_select
Function prototype	void pmu_ldo_output_select(uint32_t ldo_output);
Function descriptions	internal voltage regulator (LDO) output voltage select

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ldo_output</b>	output voltage mode
<i>PMU_LDOVS_LOW</i>	output low voltage mode
<i>PMU_LDOVS_NORMAL</i>	output normal voltage mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select output low voltage mode */
pmu_ldo_output_select (PMU_LDOVS_LOW);
```

## pmu\_lvd\_disable

The description of pmu\_lvd\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-351. Function pmu\_lvd\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_lvd_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void pmu_lvd_disable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable PMU lvd
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable PMU lvd */
pmu_lvd_disable();
```

## pmu\_to\_sleepmode

The description of pmu\_to\_sleepmode is shown as below:

**Table 3-352. Function pmu\_to\_sleepmode**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_to_sleepmode
<b>Function prototype</b>	void pmu_to_sleepmode(uint8_t sleepmodecmd);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	PMU work at sleep mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>sleepmodecmd</b>	command to enter sleep mode
<i>WFI_CMD</i>	use WFI command
<i>WFE_CMD</i>	use WFE command
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* PMU work at sleep mode */
pmu_to_sleepmode(WFI_CMD);
```

## pmu\_to\_deepsleepmode

The description of pmu\_to\_deepsleepmode is shown as below:

**Table 3-353. Function pmu\_to\_deepsleepmode**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_to_deepsleepmode
<b>Function prototype</b>	void pmu_to_deepsleepmode(uint32_t ldo,uint8_t deepsleepmodecmd);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	PMU work at deepsleep mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ldo</b>	ldo work mode
<i>PMU_LDO_NORMAL</i>	LDO normal work when pmu enter deepsleep mode
<i>PMU_LDO_LOWPOWER</i>	LDO work at low power mode when pmu enter deepsleep mode
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>deepsleepmodecmd</b>	command to enter deepsleep mode
<i>WFI_CMD</i>	use WFI command
<i>WFE_CMD</i>	use WFE command
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* PMU work at deepsleep mode */
pmu_to_deepsleepmode(PMU_LDO_NORMAL, WFI_CMD);
```

## pmu\_to\_standbymode

The description of pmu\_to\_standbymode is shown as below:

**Table 3-354. Function pmu\_to\_standbymode**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_to_standbymode
<b>Function prototype</b>	void pmu_to_standbymode(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	pmu work at standby mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* PMU work at standby mode */
pmu_to_standby();
```

## pmu\_wakeup\_pin\_enable

The description of pmu\_wakeup\_pin\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-355. Function pmu\_wakeup\_pin\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_wakeup_pin_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void pmu_wakeup_pin_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable wakeup pin
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable wakeup pin */
pmu_wakeup_pin_enable();
```

## pmu\_wakeup\_pin\_disable

The description of pmu\_wakeup\_pin\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-356. Function pmu\_wakeup\_pin\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_wakeup_pin_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void pmu_wakeup_pin_disable (void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable wakeup pin
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable wakeup pin */
pmu_wakeup_pin_disable();
```

## pmu\_backup\_write\_enable

The description of pmu\_backup\_write\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-357. Function pmu\_backup\_write\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_backup_write_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void pmu_backup_write_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable backup domain write
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable backup domain write */
pmu_backup_write_enable ();
```

## pmu\_backup\_write\_disable

The description of pmu\_backup\_write\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-358. Function pmu\_backup\_write\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_backup_write_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void pmu_backup_write_disable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable backup domain write
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable backup domain write */
pmu_backup_write_disable();
```

## pmu\_flag\_get

The description of pmu\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-359. Function pmu\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus pmu_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get flag state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_WAKEUP</i>	wakeup flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_STANDBY</i>	standby flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_LVD</i>	low voltage detector status flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get flag state */
FlagStatus status;
```



```
status = pmu_flag_get(PMU_FLAG_WAKEUP);
```

## pmu\_flag\_clear

The description of pmu\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-360. Function pmu\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	pmu_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void pmu_flag_clear(uint32_t flag_reset);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear flag bit
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag_reset</b>	flag
PMU_FLAG_RESET_WAKEUP	reset wakeup flag
PMU_FLAG_RESET_STANDBY	reset standby flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear flag bit */
```

```
pmu_flag_clear(PMU_FLAG_RESET_WAKEUP);
```

## 3.18. RCU

RCU is the reset and clock unit. Reset Control includes the control of three kinds of reset: power reset, system reset and backup domain reset. The Clock Control unit provides a range of frequencies and clock functions. The RCU registers are listed in chapter [3.18.1](#), the RCU firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.18.2](#).

### 3.18.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

**Table 3-361. RCU Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
RCU_CTL	Control register
RCU_CFG0	Clock configuration register 0
RCU_INT	Clock interrupt register
RCU_APB2RST	APB2 reset register
RCU_APB1RST	APB1 reset register

Registers	Descriptions
RCU_AHBEN	AHB enable register
RCU_APB2EN	APB2 enable register
RCU_APB1EN	APB1 enable register
RCU_BDCTL	Backup domain control register
RCU_RSTSCK	Reset source/clock register
RCU_AHBRST	AHB reset register
RCU_CFG1	Clock configuration register 1
RCU_DSV	Deep-sleep mode voltage register
RCU_ADDCTL	Additional clock control register
RCU_ADDINT	Additional clock interrupt register
RCU_ADDAPB1RST	APB1 additional reset register
RCU_ADDAPB1EN	APB1 additional enable register

## 3.18.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

**Table 3-362. RCU firmware function**

Function name	Function description
rcu_deinit	deinitialize the RCU
rcu_periph_clock_enable	enable the peripherals clock
rcu_periph_clock_disable	disable the peripherals clock
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable	enable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable	disable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
rcu_periph_reset_enable	enable the peripherals reset
rcu_periph_reset_disable	disable the peripheral reset
rcu_bkp_reset_enable	enable the BKP domain reset
rcu_bkp_reset_disable	disable the BKP domain reset
rcu_system_clock_source_config	configure the system clock source
rcu_system_clock_source_get	get the system clock source
rcu_ahb_clock_config	configure the AHB clock prescaler selection
rcu_apb1_clock_config	configure the APB1 clock prescaler selection
rcu_apb2_clock_config	configure the APB2 clock prescaler selection
rcu_ckout0_config	configure the CK_OUT0 clock source
rcu_pll_config	configure the main PLL clock
rcu_pllpresel_config	configure the PLL clock source preselection
rcu_predv0_config	configure the PREDV0 division factor
rcu_predv1_config	configure the PREDV1 division factor
rcu_pll1_config	configure the PLL1 clock
rcu_pll2_config	configure the PLL2 clock
rcu_adc_clock_config	configure the ADC prescaler factor
rcu_usb_clock_config	configure the USB prescaler factor
rcu_rtc_clock_config	configure the RTC clock source selection

Function name	Function description
rcu_i2s1_clock_config	configure the I2S1 clock source selection
rcu_i2s2_clock_config	configure the I2S2 clock source selection
rcu_ck48m_clock_config	configure the CK48M clock selection
rcu_flag_get	get the clock stabilization and peripheral reset flags
rcu_all_reset_flag_clear	clear all the reset flag
rcu_interrupt_flag_get	get the clock stabilization interrupt and ckm flags
rcu_interrupt_flag_clear	clear the interrupt flags
rcu_interrupt_enable	enable the stabilization interrupt
rcu_interrupt_disable	disable the stabilization interrupt
rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config	configure the LXTAL drive capability
rcu_osci_stab_wait	wait for oscillator stabilization flags is SET or oscillator startup is timeout
rcu_osci_on	turn on the oscillator
rcu_osci_off	turn off the oscillator
rcu_osci_bypass_mode_enable	enable the oscillator bypass mode
rcu_osci_bypass_mode_disable	disable the oscillator bypass mode
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable	enable the HXTAL clock monitor
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable	disable the HXTAL clock monitor
rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set	set the IRC8M adjust value
rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set	set the deep-sleep mode voltage value
rcu_clock_freq_get	get the system clock, bus clock frequency

## Enum rcu\_periph\_enum

**Table 3-363. Enum rcu\_periph\_enum**

enum name	Function description
RCU_DMA0	DMA0 clock
RCU_DMA1	DMA1 clock
RCU_CRC	CRC clock
RCU_EXMC	EXMC clock
RCU_USBFS	USBFS clock
RCU_TIMER1	TIMER1 clock
RCU_TIMER2	TIMER2 clock
RCU_TIMER3	TIMER3 clock
RCU_TIMER4	TIMER4 clock
RCU_TIMER5	TIMER5 clock
RCU_TIMER6	TIMER6 clock
RCU_TIMER11	TIMER11 clock
RCU_TIMER12	TIMER12 clock
RCU_TIMER13	TIMER13 clock
RCU_WWDGT	WWDGT clock
RCU_SPI1	SPI1 clock

enum name	Function description
RCU_SPI2	SPI2 clock
RCU_USART1	USART1 clock
RCU_USART2	USART2 clock
RCU_UART3	UART3 clock
RCU_UART4	UART4 clock
RCU_I2C0	I2C0 clock
RCU_I2C1	I2C1 clock
RCU_BKPI	BKPI clock
RCU_PMU	PMU clock
RCU_DAC	DAC clock
RCU_RTC	RTC clock
RCU_CTC	CTC clock
RCU_AF	alternate function clock
RCU_GPIOA	GPIOA clock
RCU_GPIOB	GPIOB clock
RCU_GPIOC	GPIOC clock
RCU_GPIOD	GPIOD clock
RCU_GPIOE	GPIOE clock
RCU_ADC0	ADC0 clock
RCU_ADC1	ADC1 clock
RCU_TIMER0	TIMER0 clock
RCU_SPI0	SPI0 clock
RCU_TIMER7	TIMER7 clock
RCU_USART0	USART0 clock
RCU_ADC2	ADC2 clock
RCU_TIMER8	TIMER8 clock
RCU_TIMER9	TIMER9 clock
RCU_TIMER10	TIMER10 clock

## Enum rcu\_periph\_sleep\_enum

Table 3-364. Enum rcu\_periph\_sleep\_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_SRAM_SLP	SRAM clock when sleep mode
RCU_FMC_SLP	FMC clock when sleep mode

## Enum rcu\_periph\_reset\_enum

Table 3-365. Enum rcu\_periph\_reset\_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_USBFSRST	USBFS clock reset
RCU_TIMER1RST	TIMER1 clock reset

enum name	Function description
RCU_TIMER2RST	TIMER2 clock reset
RCU_TIMER3RST	TIMER3 clock reset
RCU_TIMER4RST	TIMER4 clock reset
RCU_TIMER5RST	TIMER5 clock reset
RCU_TIMER6RST	TIMER6 clock reset
RCU_TIMER11RST	TIMER11 clock reset
RCU_TIMER12RST	TIMER12 clock reset
RCU_TIMER13RST	TIMER13 clock reset
RCU_WWDGTRST	WWDGT clock reset
RCU_SPI1RST	SPI1 clock reset
RCU_SPI2RST	SPI2 clock reset
RCU_USART1RST	USART1 clock reset
RCU_USART2RST	USART2 clock reset
RCU_UART3RST	UART3 clock reset
RCU_UART4RST	UART4 clock reset
RCU_I2C0RST	I2C0 clock reset
RCU_I2C1RST	I2C1 clock reset
RCU_USBDRST	USB clock reset
RCU_I2C2RST	I2C2 clock reset
RCU_BKPIRST	BKPI clock reset
RCU_PMURST	PMU clock reset
RCU_DACRST	DAC clock reset
RCU_CTCRST	CTC clock reset
RCU_AFRST	alternate function clock reset
RCU_GPIOARST	GPIOA clock reset
RCU_GPIOBRST	GPIOB clock reset
RCU_GPIOCRST	GPIOC clock reset
RCU_GPIODRST	GPIOD clock reset
RCU_GPIOERST	GPIOE clock reset
RCU_ADC0RST	ADC0 clock reset
RCU_ADC1RST	ADC1 clock reset
RCU_TIMER0RST	TIMER0 clock reset
RCU_SPI0RST	SPI0 clock reset
RCU_TIMER7RST	TIMER7 clock reset
RCU_USART0RST	USART0 clock reset
RCU_TIMER8RST	TIMER8 clock reset
RCU_TIMER9RST	TIMER9 clock reset
RCU_TIMER10RST	TIMER10 clock reset

## Enum rcu\_flag\_enum

**Table 3-366. Enum rcu\_flag\_enum**

enum name	Function description
RCU_FLAG_IRC8MSTB	IRC8M stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_HXTALSTB	HXTAL stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_PLLSTB	PLL stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_PLL1STB	PLL1 stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_PLL2STB	PLL2 stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_LXTALSTB	LXTAL stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_IRC40KSTB	IRC40K stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_IRC48MSTB	IRC48M stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_EPRST	external PIN reset flags
RCU_FLAG_PORRST	power reset flags
RCU_FLAG_SWRST	software reset flags
RCU_FLAG_FWDGTRST	FWDGT reset flags
RCU_FLAG_WWDGTRST	WWDGT reset flags
RCU_FLAG_LPRST	low-power reset flags

## Enum rcu\_int\_flag\_enum

**Table 3-367. Enum rcu\_int\_flag\_enum**

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC40KSTB	IRC40K stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_LXTALSTB	LXTAL stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC8MSTB	IRC8M stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTALSTB	HXTAL stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLLSTB	PLL stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLL1STB	PLL1 stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLL2STB	PLL2 stabilization interrupt flag

enum name	Function description
STB	
RCU_INT_FLAG_CKM	HXTAL clock stuck interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC4 8MSTB	IRC48M stabilization interrupt flag

## Enum rcu\_int\_flag\_clear\_enum

**Table 3-368. Enum rcu\_int\_flag\_clear\_enum**

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC4 0KSTB_CLR	IRC40K stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_LXTA LSTB_CLR	LXTAL stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC8 MSTB_CLR	IRC8M stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTA LSTB_CLR	HXTAL stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLLS TB_CLR	PLL stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLL1 STB_CLR	PLL1 stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLL2 STB_CLR	PLL2 stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_CKM _CLR	CKM interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC4 8MSTB_CLR	internal 48 MHz RC oscillator stabilization interrupt clear

## Enum rcu\_int\_enum

**Table 3-369. Enum rcu\_int\_enum**

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_IRC40KSTB	IRC40K stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_LXTALSTB	LXTAL stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_IRC8MSTB	IRC8M stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_HXTALSTB	HXTAL stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_PLLSTB	PLL stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_PLL1STB	PLL1 stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_PLL2STB	PLL2 stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_IRC48MSTB	internal 48 MHz RC oscillator stabilization interrupt

## Enum rcu\_osci\_type\_enum

**Table 3-370. Enum rcu\_osci\_type\_enum**

enum name	Function description
RCU_HXTAL	HXTAL
RCU_LXTAL	LXTAL
RCU_IRC8M	IRC8M
RCU_IRC48M	IRC48M
RCU_IRC40K	IRC40K
RCU_PLL_CK	PLL
RCU_PLL1_CK	PLL1
RCU_PLL2_CK	PLL2

## Enum rcu\_clock\_freq\_enum

**Table 3-371. Enum rcu\_clock\_freq\_enum**

enum name	Function description
CK_SYS	system clock
CK_AHB	AHB clock
CK_APB1	APB1 clock
CK_APB2	APB2 clock

## rcu\_deinit

The description of rcu\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-372. Function rcu\_deinit**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_deinit(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	deinitialize the RCU, reset the value of all RCU registers into initial values
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_osci_stab_wait
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset RCU */
rcu_deinit();
```



## rcu\_periph\_clock\_enable

The description of rcu\_periph\_clock\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-373. Function rcu\_periph\_clock\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_periph_clock_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_periph_clock_enable(rcu_periph_enum periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the peripherals clock
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>periph</b>	RCU peripherals, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-363. Enum rcu_periph_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the USART0 clock */
rcu_periph_clock_enable(RCU_USART0);
```

## rcu\_periph\_clock\_disable

The description of rcu\_periph\_clock\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-374. Function rcu\_periph\_clock\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_periph_clock_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_periph_clock_disable(rcu_periph_enum periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the peripherals clock
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>periph</b>	RCU peripherals, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-363. Enum rcu_periph_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the USART0 clock */
rcu_periph_clock_disable(RCU_USART0);
```

## rcu\_periph\_clock\_sleep\_enable

The description of rcu\_periph\_clock\_sleep\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-375. Function rcu\_periph\_clock\_sleep\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable(rcu_periph_sleep_enum periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>periph</b>	RCU peripherals, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-364. Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the FMC clock when in sleep mode */
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable(RCU_FMC_SLP);
```

## rcu\_periph\_clock\_sleep\_disable

The description of rcu\_periph\_clock\_sleep\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-376. Function rcu\_periph\_clock\_sleep\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable(rcu_periph_sleep_enum periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>periph</b>	RCU peripherals, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-364. Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the FMC clock when in sleep mode */
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable(RCU_FMC_SLP);
```

## rcu\_periph\_reset\_enable

The description of rcu\_periph\_reset\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-377. Function rcu\_periph\_reset\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_periph_reset_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_periph_reset_enable(rcu_periph_reset_enum periph_reset);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the peripherals reset
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>periph_reset</b>	RCU peripherals reset, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-365. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 reset */
rcu_periph_reset_enable(RCU_SPI0RST);
```

## rcu\_periph\_reset\_disable

The description of rcu\_periph\_reset\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-378. Function rcu\_periph\_reset\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_periph_reset_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_periph_reset_disable(rcu_periph_reset_enum periph_reset);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the peripheral reset
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>periph_reset</b>	RCU peripherals reset, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-365. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 reset */
rcu_periph_reset_disable(RCU_SPI0RST);
```

## rcu\_bkp\_reset\_enable

The description of rcu\_bkp\_reset\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-379. Function rcu\_bkp\_reset\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_bkp_reset_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_bkp_reset_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the BKP domain reset
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset the BKP domain */
rcu_bkp_reset_enable();
```

## rcu\_bkp\_reset\_disable

The description of rcu\_bkp\_reset\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-380. Function rcu\_bkp\_reset\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_bkp_reset_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_bkp_reset_disable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the BKP domain reset
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the BKP domain reset */
rcu_bkp_reset_disable();
```

## rcu\_system\_clock\_source\_config

The description of rcu\_system\_clock\_source\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-381. Function rcu\_system\_clock\_source\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_system_clock_source_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_system_clock_source_config(uint32_t ck_sys);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the system clock source
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ck_sys</b>	system clock source select
<i>RCU_CKSYSSRC_IRC8M</i>	select CK_IRC8M as the CK_SYS source
<i>RCU_CKSYSSRC_HXTAL</i>	select CK_HXTAL as the CK_SYS source
<i>RCU_CKSYSSRC_PLL</i>	select CK_PLL as the CK_SYS source
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CK_HXTAL as the CK_SYS source */
rcu_system_clock_source_config(RCU_CKSYSSRC_HXTAL);
```

## rcu\_system\_clock\_source\_get

The description of rcu\_system\_clock\_source\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-382. Function rcu\_system\_clock\_source\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_system_clock_source_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint32_t rcu_system_clock_source_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get the system clock source
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint32_t</b>	RCU_SCSS_IRC8M/RCU_SCSS_HXTAL/RCU_SCSS_PLL

Example:

```
uint32_t temp_cksys_status;

/* get the CK_SYS source */

temp_cksys_status = rcu_system_clock_source_get();
```

## rcu\_ahb\_clock\_config

The description of rcu\_ahb\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-383. Function rcu\_ahb\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_ahb_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_ahb_clock_config(uint32_t ck_ahb);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the AHB clock prescaler selection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ck_ahb</b>	AHB clock prescaler selection
<i>RCU_AHB_CKSYS_DIVx</i>	select CK_SYS / x, (x=1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 64, 128, 256, 512)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CK_SYS/128 */

rcu_ahb_clock_config(RCU_AHB_CKSYS_DIV128);
```

## rcu\_apb1\_clock\_config

The description of rcu\_apb1\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-384. Function rcu\_apb1\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_apb1_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_apb1_clock_config(uint32_t ck_apb1);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the APB1 clock prescaler selection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ck_apb1</b>	APB1 clock prescaler selection
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV1</i>	select CK_AHB as CK_APB1
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV2</i>	select CK_AHB/2 as CK_APB1

<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_D</i> IV4	select CK_AHB/4 as CK_APB1
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_D</i> IV8	select CK_AHB/8 as CK_APB1
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_D</i> IV16	select CK_AHB/16 as CK_APB1
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CK_AHB/16 as CK_APB1 */
```

```
rcu_apb1_clock_config(RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV16);
```

## rcu\_apb2\_clock\_config

The description of rcu\_apb2\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-385. Function rcu\_apb2\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_apb2_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_apb2_clock_config(uint32_t ck_apb2);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the APB2 clock prescaler selection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ck_apb2</b>	APB2 clock prescaler selection
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> IV1	select CK_AHB as CK_APB2
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> IV2	select CK_AHB/2 as CK_APB2
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> IV4	select CK_AHB/4 as CK_APB2
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> IV8	select CK_AHB/8 as CK_APB2
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> IV16	select CK_AHB/16 as CK_APB2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CK_AHB/8 as CK_APB2 */
```

```
rcu_apb2_clock_config(RCU_APB2_CKAHB_DIV8);
```

## rcu\_ckout0\_config

The description of rcu\_ckout0\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-386. Function rcu\_ckout0\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_ckout0_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_ckout0_config(uint32_t ckout0_src);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the CK_OUT0 clock source
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ckout0_src</b>	CK_OUT0 clock source selection
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_NONE	no clock selected
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKSYS	select system clock CK_SYS
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_IRC8M	select high speed 8M internal oscillator clock
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_HXTAL	select HXTAL
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKPLL_DIV2	select (CK_PLL / 2) clock
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKPLL1	select CK_PLL1 clock
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKPLL2_DIV2	select (CK_PLL2 / 2) clock
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKPLL2	select CK_PLL2 clock
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_IRC48M	select IRC48M clock
RCU_CKOUT0SRC_IRC48M_DIV8	select (IRC48M / 8) clock
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the HXTAL as CK_OUT0 clock source */
```

```
rcu_ckout0_config(RCU_CKOUT0SRC_HXTAL);
```



## rcu\_pll\_config

The description of rcu\_pll\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-387. Function rcu\_pll\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_pll_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_pll_config(uint32_t pll_src, uint32_t pll_mul);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the main PLL clock
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pll_src</b>	PLL clock source selection
<i>RCU_PLLSRC_IRC8M_DIV2</i>	IRC8M/2 clock is selected as source clock of PLL
<i>RCU_PLLSRC_HXTAL_IRC48M</i>	HXTAL or IRC48M is selected as source clock of PLL
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pll_mul</b>	PLL clock multiplication factor
<i>RCU_PLL_MULx</i>	PLL clock * x (x = 2..14, 6.5, 16..31)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL */
```

```
rcu_pll_config(RCU_PLLSRC_HXTAL, RCU_PLL_MUL10);
```

## rcu\_pllpresel\_config

The description of rcu\_pllpresel\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-388. Function rcu\_pllpresel\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_pllpresel_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_pllpresel_config(uint32_t pll_presel);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the PLL clock source preselection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pll_presel</b>	PLL clock source preselection
<i>RCU_PLLPRESRC_HXTAL</i>	HXTAL selected as PREDV0 source clock
<i>RCU_PLLPRESRC_IRC48M</i>	CK_PLL selected as PREDV0 input source clock

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL clock source preselection */
```

```
rcu_pllpresele_config (RCU_PLLPRESRC_HXTAL);
```

## rcu\_predv0\_config

The description of rcu\_predv0\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-389. Function rcu\_predv0\_config**

Function name	rcu_predv0_config
Function prototype	void rcu_predv0_config(uint32_t predv0_source, uint32_t predv0_div);
Function descriptions	configure the PREDV0 division factor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
predv0_source	PREDV0 input clock source selection
RCU_PREDV0SRC_HXTAL_IRC48M	select HXTAL or IRC48M as PREDV0 input source clock
RCU_PREDV0SRC_CKPLL1	select CK_PLL1 as PREDV0 input source clock
Input parameter{in}	
predv0_div	PREDV0 division factor
RCU_PREDV0_DIVx	PREDV0 input source clock is divided x (x=1..16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PREDV0 division factor */
```

```
rcu_predv0_config(RCU_PREDV0SRC_HXTAL_IRC48M, RCU_PREDV0_DIV4);
```

## rcu\_predv1\_config

The description of rcu\_predv1\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-390. Function rcu\_predv1\_config**

Function name	rcu_predv1_config
Function prototype	void rcu_predv1_config(uint32_t predv1_div);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the PREDV1 division factor
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>predv1_div</b>	PREDV1 division factor
<i>RCU_PREDV1_DIVx</i>	PREDV1 input source clock is divided x (x=1..16)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PREDV1 division factor */
rcu_predv1_config(RCU_PREDV1_DIV8);
```

## rcu\_pll1\_config

The description of rcu\_pll1\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-391. Function rcu\_pll1\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_pll1_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_pll1_config(uint32_t pll_mul);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the PLL1 clock
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pll_mul</b>	PLL clock multiplication factor
<i>RCU_PLL1_MULx</i>	PLL1 clock * x, (x = 8..16, 20)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL1 clock */
rcu_pll1_config(RCU_PLL1_MUL8);
```

## rcu\_pll2\_config

The description of rcu\_pll2\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-392. Function rcu\_pll2\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_pll2_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_pll2_config(uint32_t pll_mul)

<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the PLL2 clock
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pll_mul</b>	PLL clock multiplication factor
<i>RCU_PLL2_MULx</i>	PLL2 clock * x, (x = 8..16, 20)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL2 clock */
```

```
rcu_pll2_config(RCU_PLL2_MUL8);
```

## rcu\_adc\_clock\_config

The description of rcu\_adc\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-393. Function rcu\_adc\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_adc_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_adc_clock_config(uint32_t adc_psc);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the ADC prescaler factor
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>adc_psc</b>	ADC prescaler factor
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV2</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_APB2 / 2$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV4</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_APB2 / 4$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV6</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_APB2 / 6$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV8</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_APB2 / 8$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV12</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_APB2 / 12$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV16</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_APB2 / 16$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAHB_DIV3</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_AHB / 3$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAHB_DIV5</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_AHB / 5$

<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAHB_DIV7</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_AHB / 7$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAHB_DIV9</i>	$CK\_ADC = CK\_AHB / 9$
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the ADC prescaler factor */
```

```
rcu_adc_clock_config(RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV8);
```

## rcu\_usb\_clock\_config

The description of rcu\_usb\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-394. Function rcu\_usb\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_usb_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_usb_clock_config(uint32_t usb_psc);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the USB prescaler factor
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usb_psc</b>	USB prescaler factor
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV1_5</i>	$CK\_USBFS = CK\_PLL / 1.5$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV1</i>	$CK\_USBFS = CK\_PLL / 1$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV2_5</i>	$CK\_USBFS = CK\_PLL / 2.5$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV2</i>	$CK\_USBFS = CK\_PLL / 2$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV3</i>	$CK\_USBFS = CK\_PLL / 3$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV3_5</i>	$CK\_USBFS = CK\_PLL / 3.5$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV4</i>	$CK\_USBFS = CK\_PLL / 4$
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the USB prescaler factor */

rcu_usb_clock_config(RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV2_5);
```

## rcu\_rtc\_clock\_config

The description of rcu\_rtc\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-395. Function rcu\_rtc\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_rtc_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_rtc_clock_config(uint32_t rtc_clock_source);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the RTC clock source selection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>rtc_clock_source</b>	RTC clock source selection
RCU_RTCSRC_NONE	no clock selected
RCU_RTCSRC_LXTAL	select CK_LXTAL as RTC source clock
RCU_RTCSRC_IRC40K	select CK_IRC40K as RTC source clock
RCU_RTCSRC_HXTAL_DIV_128	select CK_HXTAL/128 as RTC source clock
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the RTC clock source selection */

rcu_rtc_clock_config(RCU_RTCSRC_IRC40K);
```

## rcu\_i2s1\_clock\_config

The description of rcu\_i2s1\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-396. Function rcu\_i2s1\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_i2s1_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_i2s1_clock_config(uint32_t i2s_clock_source);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the I2S1 clock source selection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2s_clock_source</b>	I2S clock source selection

<i>RCU_I2S1SRC_CKSYS</i>	select system clock as I2S1 source clock
<i>RCU_I2S1SRC_CKPLL2_MUL2</i>	select CK_PLL2 * 2 as I2S1 source clock
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the I2S1 clock source selection */
```

```
rcu_i2s1_clock_config(RCU_I2S1SRC_CKPLL2_MUL2);
```

## rcu\_i2s2\_clock\_config

The description of rcu\_i2s2\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-397. Function rcu\_i2s2\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_i2s2_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_i2s2_clock_config(uint32_t i2s_clock_source);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the I2S2 clock source selection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>i2s_clock_source</b>	I2S clock source selection
<i>RCU_I2S2SRC_CKSYS</i>	select system clock as I2S2 source clock
<i>RCU_I2S2SRC_CKPLL2_MUL2</i>	select CK_PLL2 * 2 as I2S2 source clock
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the I2S2 clock source selection */
```

```
rcu_i2s2_clock_config(RCU_I2S2SRC_CKPLL2_MUL2);
```

## rcu\_ck48m\_clock\_config

The description of rcu\_ck48m\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-398. Function rcu\_ck48m\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_ck48m_clock_config
----------------------	------------------------

<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_ck48m_clock_config(uint32_t ck48m_clock_source);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the CK48M clock source selection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ck48m_clock_source</b>	CK48M clock source selection
<i>RCU_CK48MSRC_CKPLL</i>	CK_PLL selected as CK48M source clock
<i>RCU_CK48MSRC_IRC48M</i>	CK_IRC48M selected as CK48M source clock
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CK48M clock source selection */
rcu_ck48m_clock_config(RCU_CK48MSRC_CKPLL);
```

### rcu\_flag\_get

The description of rcu\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-399. Function rcu\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus rcu_flag_get(rcu_flag_enum flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get the clock stabilization and peripheral reset flags
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	the clock stabilization and peripheral reset flags, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-366. Enum rcu_flag_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the clock stabilization flag */
if(RESET != rcu_flag_get(RCU_FLAG_LXTALSTB)){
}
```



## rcu\_all\_reset\_flag\_clear

The description of rcu\_all\_reset\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-400. Function rcu\_all\_reset\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_all_reset_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_all_reset_flag_clear(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear all the reset flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear all the reset flag */
rcu_all_reset_flag_clear();
```

## rcu\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of rcu\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-401. Function rcu\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus rcu_interrupt_flag_get(rcu_int_flag_enum int_flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get the clock stabilization interrupt and ckm flags
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>int_flag</b>	interrupt and ckm flags, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-367. Enum rcu_int_flag_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the clock stabilization interrupt flag */
if(SET == rcu_interrupt_flag_get(RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTALSTB)){
}
```

## rcu\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of rcu\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-402. Function rcu\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_interrupt_flag_clear(rcu_int_flag_clear_enum int_flag_clear)
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear the interrupt flags
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>int_flag_clear</b>	clock stabilization and stuck interrupt flags clear, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-368. Enum rcu_int_flag_clear_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the interrupt HXTAL stabilization interrupt flag */
rcu_interrupt_flag_clear(RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTALSTB_CLR);
```

## rcu\_interrupt\_enable

The description of rcu\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-403. Function rcu\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_interrupt_enable(rcu_int_enum stab_int);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the stabilization interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>stab_int</b>	clock stabilization interrupt, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-369. Enum rcu_int_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the HXTAL stabilization interrupt */
rcu_interrupt_enable(RCU_INT_HXTALSTB);
```

## rcu\_interrupt\_disable

The description of rcu\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-404. Function rcu\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_interrupt_disable(rcu_int_enum stab_int);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the stabilization interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>stab_int</b>	clock stabilization interrupt, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-369. Enum rcu_int_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the HXTAL stabilization interrupt */
rcu_interrupt_disable(RCU_INT_HXTALSTB);
```

## rcu\_lxtal\_drive\_capability\_config

The description of rcu\_lxtal\_drive\_capability\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-405. Function rcu\_lxtal\_drive\_capability\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config(uint32_t lxtal_dricap);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the LXTAL drive capability
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>lxtal_dricap</b>	drive capability of LXTAL
<i>RCU_LXTAL_LOWDRI</i>	lower driving capability
<i>RCU_LXTAL_MED_LOWDRI</i>	medium low driving capability
<i>RCU_LXTAL_MED_HI_GHDRI</i>	medium high driving capability
<i>RCU_LXTAL_HIGHDRI</i>	higher driving capability
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the LXTAL drive capability */  
  
rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config (RCU_LXTAL_LOWDRI);
```

## rcu\_osci\_stab\_wait

The description of rcu\_osci\_stab\_wait is shown as below:

**Table 3-406. Function rcu\_osci\_stab\_wait**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_osci_stab_wait
<b>Function prototype</b>	ErrStatus rcu_osci_stab_wait(rcu_osci_type_enum osci);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	wait for oscillator stabilization flags is SET or oscillator startup is timeout
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>osci</b>	oscillator types, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-370. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>ErrStatus</b>	SUCCESS or ERROR

Example:

```
/* wait for oscillator stabilization flag */  
  
if(SUCCESS == rcu_osci_stab_wait(RCU_HXTAL)){  
  
}
```

## rcu\_osci\_on

The description of rcu\_osci\_on is shown as below:

**Table 3-407. Function rcu\_osci\_on**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_osci_on
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_osci_on(rcu_osci_type_enum osci);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	turn on the oscillator
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>osci</b>	oscillator types, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-370. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn on the high speed crystal oscillator */
```

```
rcu_osci_on(RCU_HXTAL);
```

## rcu\_osci\_off

The description of rcu\_osci\_off is shown as below:

**Table 3-408. Function rcu\_osci\_off**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_osci_off
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_osci_off(rcu_osci_type_enum osci);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	turn off the oscillator
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>osci</b>	oscillator types, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-370. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum</a>
RCU_HXTAL	high speed crystal oscillator(HXTAL)
RCU_LXTAL	low speed crystal oscillator(LXTAL)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn off the high speed crystal oscillator */
```

```
rcu_osci_off(RCU_HXTAL);
```

## rcu\_osci\_bypass\_mode\_enable

The description of rcu\_osci\_bypass\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-409. Function rcu\_osci\_bypass\_mode\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	rcu_osci_bypass_mode_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rcu_osci_bypass_mode_enable(rcu_osci_type_enum osci);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the oscillator bypass mode
<b>Precondition</b>	HXTALEN or LXTALEN must be reset before it
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>osci</b>	oscillator types, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-370. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum</a>
RCU_HXTAL	high speed crystal oscillator(HXTAL)
RCU_LXTAL	low speed crystal oscillator(LXTAL)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the high speed crystal oscillator bypass mode */
```

```
rcu_osci_bypass_mode_enable(RCU_HXTAL);
```

## rcu\_osci\_bypass\_mode\_disable

The description of rcu\_osci\_bypass\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-410. Function rcu\_osci\_bypass\_mode\_disable**

Function name	rcu_osci_bypass_mode_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_osci_bypass_mode_disable(rcu_osci_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	disable the oscillator bypass mode
Precondition	HXTALEN or LXTALEN must be reset before it
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-370. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum</a>
RCU_HXTAL	high speed crystal oscillator(HXTAL)
RCU_LXTAL	low speed crystal oscillator(LXTAL)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the high speed crystal oscillator bypass mode */
```

```
rcu_osci_bypass_mode_disable(RCU_HXTAL);
```

## rcu\_hxtal\_clock\_monitor\_enable

The description of rcu\_hxtal\_clock\_monitor\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-411. Function rcu\_hxtal\_clock\_monitor\_enable**

Function name	rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the HXTAL clock monitor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the HXTAL clock monitor */
```

```
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable();
```

## rcu\_hxtal\_clock\_monitor\_disable

The description of rcu\_hxtal\_clock\_monitor\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-412. Function rcu\_hxtal\_clock\_monitor\_disable**

Function name	rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the HXTAL clock monitor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the HXTAL clock monitor */
```

```
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable();
```

## rcu\_irc8m\_adjust\_value\_set

The description of rcu\_irc8m\_adjust\_value\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-413. Function rcu\_irc8m\_adjust\_value\_set**

Function name	rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set
Function prototype	void rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set(uint32_t irc8m_adjval);
Function descriptions	set the IRC8M adjust value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
irc8m_adjval	IRC8M adjust value, must be between 0 and 0x1F
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the IRC8M adjust value */

rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set(0x10);
```

### rcu\_deepsleep\_voltage\_set

The description of rcu\_deepsleep\_voltage\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-414. Function rcu\_deepsleep\_voltage\_set**

Function name	rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set
Function prototype	void rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set(uint32_t dsvol);
Function descriptions	set the deep-sleep mode voltage value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dsvol	deep sleep mode voltage
RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_1_0	the core voltage is 1.0V in deep-sleep mode
RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_0_9	the core voltage is 0.9V in deep-sleep mode
RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_0_8	the core voltage is 0.8V in deep-sleep mode
RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_1_2	the core voltage is 1.2V in deep-sleep mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the deep-sleep mode voltage */

rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set(RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_1_0);
```

### rcu\_clock\_freq\_get

The description of rcu\_clock\_freq\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-415. Function rcu\_clock\_freq\_get**

Function name	rcu_clock_freq_get
Function prototype	uint32_t rcu_clock_freq_get(rcu_clock_freq_enum clock);
Function descriptions	get the system clock, bus clock frequency
Precondition	-
The called functions	-



Input parameter{in}	
<b>clock</b>	the clock frequency which to get
<i>CK_SYS</i>	system clock frequency
<i>CK_AHB</i>	AHB clock frequency
<i>CK_APB1</i>	APB1 clock frequency
<i>CK_APB2</i>	APB2 clock frequency
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<b>ck_freq</b>	clock frequency of system, AHB, APB1, APB2

Example:

```
uint32_t temp_freq;

/* get the system clock frequency */

temp_freq = rcu_clock_freq_get(CK_SYS);
```

## 3.19. RTC

The Real-time Clock (RTC) is usually used as a clock-calendar. The ones in the Backup Domain consist of a 32-bit up-counter, an alarm, a prescaler, a divider and the RTC clock configuration register. The RTC registers are listed in chapter [3.19.1](#), the RTC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.19.2](#).

### 3.19.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

RTC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-416. RTC Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
RTC_INTEN	Interrupt enable register
RTC_CTL	Control register
RTC_PSCH	Prescaler high register
RTC_PSCL	Prescaler low register
RTC_DIVH	Divider high register
RTC_DIVL	Divider low register
RTC_CNTH	counter high register
RTC_CNTL	counter low register
RTC_ALRMH	Alarm high register
RTC_ALRML	Alarm low register

## 3.19.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

RTC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-417. RTC firmware function**

Function name	Function description
rtc_configuration_mode_enter	enter RTC configuration mode
rtc_configuration_mode_exit	exit RTC configuration mode
rtc_counter_set	set RTC counter value
rtc_prescaler_set	set RTC prescaler value
rtc_lwoff_wait	wait RTC last write operation finished flag set
rtc_register_sync_wait	wait RTC registers synchronized flag set
rtc_alarm_config	set RTC alarm value
rtc_counter_get	get RTC counter value
rtc_divider_get	get RTC divider value
rtc_flag_get	get RTC flag status
rtc_flag_clear	clear RTC flag status
rtc_interrupt_flag_get	get RTC interrupt flag status
rtc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear RTC interrupt flag status
rtc_interrupt_enable	enable RTC interrupt
rtc_interrupt_disable	disable RTC interrupt

### rtc\_configuration\_mode\_enter

The description of rtc\_configuration\_mode\_enter is shown as below:

**Table 3-418. Function rtc\_configuration\_mode\_enter**

Function name	rtc_configuration_mode_enter
Function prototype	void rtc_configuration_mode_enter(void);
Function descriptions	enter RTC configuration mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enter RTC configuration mode */
rtc_configuration_mode_enter( );
```

## rtc\_configuration\_mode\_exit

The description of rtc\_configuration\_mode\_exit is shown as below:

**Table 3-419. Function rtc\_configuration\_mode\_exit**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_configuration_mode_exit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rtc_configuration_mode_exit(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	exit RTC configuration mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* exit RTC configuration mode */
rtc_configuration_mode_exit( );
```

## rtc\_counter\_set

The description of rtc\_counter\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-420. Function rtc\_counter\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_counter_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rtc_counter_set(uint32_t cnt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set RTC counter value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
cnt	RTC counter value (0-0xFFFF FFFF)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
rtc_lwoff_wait( );

/* set counter value to 0xFFFF */
rtc_counter_set (0xFFFF);
```

## rtc\_prescaler\_set

The description of rtc\_prescaler\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-421. Function rtc\_prescaler\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_interrupt_rtc_prescaler_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rtc_prescaler_set(uint32_t psc);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set RTC prescaler value
<b>Precondition</b>	before using this function, you must call rtc_lwoff_wait ( ) function (wait until LWOFF flag is set).
<b>The called functions</b>	rtc_configuration_mode_enter / rtc_configuration_mode_exit
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>psc</b>	RTC prescaler value (0-0x000F FFFF)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
rtc_lwoff_wait( );

/* set RTC prescaler value to 0x7FFFF */
rtc_prescaler_set (0x7FFFF);
```

## rtc\_lwoff\_wait

The description of rtc\_lwoff\_wait is shown as below:

**Table 3-422. Function rtc\_lwoff\_wait**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_lwoff_wait
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rtc_lwoff_wait(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	wait RTC last write operation finished flag set
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
```

```
rtc_lwoff_wait( );

/* enable the RTC second interrupt */

rtc_interrupt_enable(RTC_INT_SECOND);
```

### rtc\_register\_sync\_wait

The description of rtc\_register\_sync\_wait is shown as below:

**Table 3-423. Function rtc\_register\_sync\_wait**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_register_sync_wait
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rtc_register_sync_wait(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	wait RTC registers synchronized flag set
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait for RTC registers synchronization */

rtc_register_sync_wait( );
```

### rtc\_alarm\_config

The description of rtc\_alarm\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-424. Function rtc\_alarm\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_alarm_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rtc_alarm_config(uint32_t alarm);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set RTC alarm value
<b>Precondition</b>	before using this function, you must call rtc_lwoff_wait ( ) function (wait until LWOFF flag is set). -
<b>The called functions</b>	rtc_configuration_mode_enter / rtc_configuration_mode_exit
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
alarm	RTC alarm value (0-0xFFFF FFFF)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

/\* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished \*/

```
rtc_lwoff_wait( );
```

/\* set alarm value to 0xFFFF \*/

```
rtc_alarm_config (0xFFFF);
```

## rtc\_counter\_get

The description of rtc\_counter\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-425. Function rtc\_counter\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_counter_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint32_t rtc_counter_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get RTC counter value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
uint32_t	the value of RTC counter

Example:

/\* get the counter value \*/

```
uint32_t rtc_counter_value;
```

```
rtc_counter_value = rtc_counter_get ( );
```

## rtc\_divider\_get

The description of rtc\_divider\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-426. Function rtc\_divider\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_divider_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint32_t rtc_divider_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get RTC divider value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

<b>uint32_t</b>	the value of RTC divider
-----------------	--------------------------

Example:

```
/* get the current RTC divider value */

uint32_t rtc_divider_value;

rtc_divider_value = rtc_divider_get ( );
```

## rtc\_flag\_get

The description of rtc\_flag\_getrtc\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-427. Function rtc\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus rtc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get RTC flag status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	specify which RTC flag status to get
<i>RTC_FLAG_SECOND</i>	second interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_OVERFLOW W</i>	overflow interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_RSYN</i>	registers synchronized flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_LWOF</i>	last write operation finished flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the RTC overflow interrupt status */

FlagStatus alarm_status;

alarm_status = rtc_flag_get (RTC_FLAG_ALARM);
```

## rtc\_flag\_clear

The description of rtc\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-428. Function rtc\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rtc_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear RTC flag status

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	specify which RTC flag status to clear
<i>RTC_FLAG_SECOND</i>	second interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_OVERFLOW</i>	overflow interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_RSYN</i>	registers synchronized flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the RTC alarm flag */
```

```
rtc_flag_clear (RTC_FLAG_ALARM);
```

## rtc\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of `rtc_interrupt_flag_get` is shown as below:

**Table 3-429. Function `rtc_interrupt_flag_get`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>rtc_interrupt_flag_get</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>FlagStatus rtc_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t flag);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get RTC interrupt flag status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	specify which RTC interrupt flag status to get
<i>RTC_INT_FLAG_SECOND</i>	second interrupt flag
<i>RTC_INT_FLAG_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt flag
<i>RTC_INT_FLAG_OVERFLOW</i>	overflow interrupt flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the RTC alarm interrupt status */
```



FlagStatus alarm\_status;

alarm\_status = rtc\_interrupt\_flag\_get (RTC\_INT\_FLAG\_ALARM);

## rtc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of rtc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-430. Function rtc\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rtc_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear RTC interrupt flag status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	specify which RTC interrupt flag status to clear
RTC_INT_FLAG_SEC OND	second interrupt flag
RTC_INT_FLAG_ALAR M	alarm interrupt flag
RTC_INT_FLAG_OVE RFLOW	overflow interrupt flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the RTC alarm interrupt flag */
```

```
rtc_interrupt_flag_clear (RTC_INT_FLAG_ALARM);
```

## rtc\_interrupt\_enable

The description of rtc\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-431. Function rtc\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	rtc_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void rtc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable RTC interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	before using this function, you must call rtc_lwoff_wait ( ) function (wait until LWOFF flag is set).
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	specify which RTC interrupt to enable
RTC_INT_SECOND	second interrupt

<i>RTC_INT_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_OVERFLOW</i>	overflow interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
```

```
rtc_lwoff_wait( );
```

```
/* enable the RTC second interrupt */
```

```
rtc_interrupt_enable(RTC_INT_SECOND);
```

## rtc\_interrupt\_disable

The description of `rtc_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-432. Function `rtc_interrupt_disable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>rtc_interrupt_disable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void rtc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable RTC interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	before using this function, you must call <code>rtc_lwoff_wait ( )</code> function (wait until LWOFF flag is set).
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	specify which RTC interrupt to disable
<i>RTC_INT_SECOND</i>	second interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_OVERFLOW</i>	overflow interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
```

```
rtc_lwoff_wait( );
```

```
/* disable the RTC second interrupt */
```

```
rtc_interrupt_disable(RTC_INT_SECOND);
```

## 3.20. SPI

The SPI/I2S module can communicate with external devices using the SPI protocol or the I2S audio protocol. The SPI/I2S registers are listed in chapter [3.20.1](#), the SPI/I2S firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.20.2](#).

### 3.20.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

SPI/I2S registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-433. SPI/I2S Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
SPI_CTL0	SPI control register 0
SPI_CTL1	SPI control register 1
SPI_STAT	SPI status register
SPI_DATA	SPI data register
SPI_CRCPOLY	SPI CRC polynomial register
SPI_RCRC	SPI receive CRC register
SPI_TCRC	SPI transmit CRC register
SPI_I2SCTL	SPI/I2S control register
SPI_I2SPSC	SPI/I2S clock prescaler register
SPI_QCTL	Quad-SPI mode control register

### 3.20.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

SPI/I2S firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-434. SPI/I2S firmware function**

Function name	Function description
spi_i2s_deinit	reset SPI and I2S peripheral
spi_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of SPI struct with the default values
spi_init	initialize SPI peripheral parameter
spi_enable	enable SPI
spi_disable	disable SPI
i2s_init	initialize I2S peripheral parameter
i2s_psc_config	configure I2S peripheral prescaler
i2s_enable	enable I2S
i2s_disable	disable I2S
spi_nss_output_enable	enable SPI NSS output function
spi_nss_output_disable	disable SPI NSS output function
spi_nss_internal_high	SPI NSS pin high level in software mode
spi_nss_internal_low	SPI NSS pin low level in software mode
spi_dma_enable	enable SPI DMA function
spi_dma_disable	disable SPI DMA function
spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config	configure SPI/I2S data frame format
spi_i2s_data_transmit	SPI transmit data
spi_i2s_data_receive	SPI receive data
spi_bidirectional_transfer_config	configure SPI bidirectional transfer direction
spi_crc_polynomial_set	set SPI CRC polynomial
spi_crc_polynomial_get	get SPI CRC polynomial
spi_crc_on	turn on SPI CRC function
spi_crc_off	turn off SPI CRC function
spi_crc_next	SPI next data is CRC value
spi_crc_get	get SPI CRC send value or receive value
spi_ti_mode_enable	enable SPI TI mode
spi_ti_mode_disable	disable SPI TI mode
spi_nssp_mode_enable	enable SPI NSS pulse mode
spi_nssp_mode_disable	disable SPI NSS pulse mode
spi_quad_enable	enable quad wire SPI
spi_quad_disable	disable quad wire SPI
spi_quad_write_enable	enable quad wire SPI write
spi_quad_read_enable	enable quad wire SPI read
spi_quad_io23_output_enable	enable quad wire SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
spi_quad_io23_output_disable	disable quad wire SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
spi_i2s_interrupt_enable	enable SPI and I2S interrupt
spi_i2s_interrupt_disable	disable SPI and I2S interrupt
spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get	get SPI and I2S interrupt status
spi_i2s_flag_get	get SPI and I2S flag status
spi_crc_error_clear	clear SPI CRC error flag status

## Structure spi\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-435. spi\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
device_mode	SPI master or slave (SPI_MASTER, SPI_SLAVE)
trans_mode	SPI transtype (SPI_TRANSMODE_FULLDUPLEX, SPI_TRANSMODE_RECEIVEONLY, SPI_TRANSMODE_BDRECEIVE, SPI_TRANSMODE_BDTRANSMIT)
frame_size	SPI frame size (SPI_FRAME_SIZE_16BIT, SPI_FRAME_SIZE_8BIT)
nss	SPI NSS control by hardware or software (SPI_NSS_SOFT, SPI_NSS_HARD)
endian	SPI big endian or little endian (SPI_ENDIAN_MSB, SPI_ENDIAN_LSB)
clock_polarity_phase	SPI clock phase and polarity (SPI_CLOCK_PL_LOW_PH_1EDGE, SPI_CLOCK_PL_HIGH_PH_1EDGE, SPI_CLOCK_PL_LOW_PH_2EDGE, SPI_CLOCK_PL_HIGH_PH_2EDGE)
prescale	SPI prescale factor (SPI_PSC_n (n=2,4,8,16,32,64,128,256))

## spi\_i2s\_deinit

The description of spi\_i2s\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-436. Function spi\_i2s\_deinit**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_i2s_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_i2s_deinit(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reset SPI and I2S peripheral
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI/I2S peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset SPI0 */
spi_i2s_deinit(SPI0);
```

## spi\_struct\_para\_init

The description of spi\_struct\_para\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-437. Function spi\_struct\_para\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_struct_para_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_struct_para_init(spi_parameter_struct* spi_struct);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize the parameters of SPI struct with the default values
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>*spi_struct</b>	a spi_parameter_struct address
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the parameters of SPI */
spi_parameter_struct spi_init_struct;
spi_struct_para_init(&spi_init_struct);
```

## spi\_init

The description of spi\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-438. Function spi\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_init(uint32_t spi_periph, spi_parameter_struct* spi_struct);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize SPI peripheral parameter
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_struct</b>	SPI parameter initialization struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure <a href="#">Table 3-435. spi_parameter_struct</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize SPI0 */
```

```
spi_parameter_struct spi_init_struct;
```

```
spi_init_struct.trans_mode      = SPI_TRANSMODE_BDTRANSMIT;
```

```
spi_init_struct.device_mode     = SPI_MASTER;
```

```
spi_init_struct.frame_size      = SPI_FRAME_SIZE_8BIT;
```

```
spi_init_struct.clock_polarity_phase = SPI_CLOCK_POLARITY_HIGH_PHASE_2EDGE;
```

```
spi_init_struct.nss             = SPI_NSS_SOFT;
```

```
spi_init_struct.prescale        = SPI_PSC_8;
```

```
spi_init_struct.endian          = SPI_ENDIAN_MSB;
```

```
spi_init(SPI0, &spi_init_struct);
```

## spi\_enable

The description of spi\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-439. Function spi\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable SPI
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 */
```

```
spi_enable(SPI0);
```

## spi\_disable

The description of spi\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-440. Function spi\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable SPI
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 */
spi_disable(SPI0);
```

### i2s\_init

The description of i2s\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-441. Function i2s\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	i2s_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2s_init(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t mode, uint32_t standard, uint32_t ckpl);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize I2S peripheral parameter
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	I2S peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mode</b>	I2S operation mode
<i>I2S_MODE_SLAVETX</i>	I2S slave transmit mode
<i>I2S_MODE_SLAVEX</i>	I2S slave receive mode
<i>I2S_MODE_MASTERTX</i>	I2S master transmit mode
<i>I2S_MODE_MASTERR</i>	I2S master receive mode
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>standard</b>	I2S standard
<i>I2S_STD_PHILLIPS</i>	I2S phillips standard
<i>I2S_STD_MSB</i>	I2S MSB standard
<i>I2S_STD_LSB</i>	I2S LSB standard
<i>I2S_STD_PCMSHORT</i>	I2S PCM short standard



<i>I2S_STD_PCMLONG</i>	I2S PCM long standard
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ckpl</b>	I2S idle state clock polarity
<i>I2S_CKPL_LOW</i>	I2S clock polarity low level
<i>I2S_CKPL_HIGH</i>	I2S clock polarity high level
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize I2S1 */
```

```
i2s_init(SPI1, I2S_MODE_MASTERTX, I2S_STD_PHILLIPS, I2S_CKPL_LOW);
```

## i2s\_psc\_config

The description of i2s\_psc\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-442. Function i2s\_psc\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	i2s_psc_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2s_psc_config(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t audiosample, uint32_t frameformat, uint32_t mckout);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure I2S prescaler
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_clock_freq_get
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	I2S peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>audiosample</b>	I2S audio sample rate
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_8K</i>	audio sample rate is 8KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_11K</i>	audio sample rate is 11KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_16K</i>	audio sample rate is 16KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_22K</i>	audio sample rate is 22KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_32K</i>	audio sample rate is 32KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_44K</i>	audio sample rate is 44KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_48K</i>	audio sample rate is 48KHz

8K	
I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_9 6K	audio sample rate is 96KHz
I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_1 92K	audio sample rate is 192KHz
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>frameformat</b>	I2S data length and channel length
I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_ DT16B_CH16B	I2S data length is 16 bit and channel length is 16 bit
I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_ DT16B_CH32B	I2S data length is 16 bit and channel length is 32 bit
I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_ DT24B_CH32B	I2S data length is 24 bit and channel length is 32 bit
I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_ DT32B_CH32B	I2S data length is 32 bit and channel length is 32 bit
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>mckout</b>	I2S master clock output
I2S_MCKOUT_ENABL E	I2S master clock output enable
I2S_MCKOUT_DISABL E	I2S master clock output disable
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure I2S1 prescaler */
```

```
i2s_psc_config(SPI1, I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_44K, I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT16B_CH16B,  
I2S_MCKOUT_DISABLE);
```

## i2s\_enable

The description of i2s\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-443. Function i2s\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	i2s_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void i2s_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable I2S
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	I2S peripheral

<i>SPIx</i>	<i>x</i> =1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2S1*/
i2s_enable(SPI1);
```

## i2s\_disable

The description of i2s\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-444. Function i2s\_disable**

Function name	i2s_disable
Function prototype	void i2s_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	disable I2S
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	I2S peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	<i>x</i> =1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2S1*/
i2s_disable(SPI1);
```

## spi\_nss\_output\_enable

The description of spi\_nss\_output\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-445. Function spi\_nss\_output\_enable**

Function name	spi_nss_output_enable
Function prototype	void spi_nss_output_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable SPI NSS output function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral

<i>SPIx</i>	<i>x=0,1,2</i>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 NSS output */
spi_nss_output_enable(SPI0);
```

## spi\_nss\_output\_disable

The description of spi\_nss\_output\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-446. Function spi\_nss\_output\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_nss_output_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_nss_output_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable SPI NSS output function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	<i>x=0,1,2</i>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 NSS output */
spi_nss_output_disable(SPI0);
```

## spi\_nss\_internal\_high

The description of spi\_nss\_internal\_high is shown as below:

**Table 3-447. Function spi\_nss\_internal\_high**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_nss_internal_high
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_nss_internal_high(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	SPI NSS pin high level in software mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral

<i>SPIx</i>	<i>x</i> =0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 NSS pin is pulled high level in software mode */
```

```
spi_nss_internal_high(SPI0);
```

## spi\_nss\_internal\_low

The description of spi\_nss\_internal\_low is shown as below:

**Table 3-448. Function spi\_nss\_internal\_low**

Function name	spi_nss_internal_low
Function prototype	void spi_nss_internal_low(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	SPI NSS pin low level in software mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	<i>x</i> =0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 NSS pin is pulled low level in software mode */
```

```
spi_nss_internal_low(SPI0);
```

## spi\_dma\_enable

The description of spi\_dma\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-449. Function spi\_dma\_enable**

Function name	spi_dma_enable
Function prototype	void spi_dma_enable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t dma);
Function descriptions	enable SPI DMA function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral

<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma</b>	SPI DMA mode
<i>SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT</i>	SPI transmit data use DMA
<i>SPI_DMA_RECEIVE</i>	SPI receive data use DMA
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 transmit data DMA function */
```

```
spi_dma_enable(SPI0, SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT);
```

### spi\_dma\_disable

The description of spi\_dma\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-450. Function spi\_dma\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_dma_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_dma_disable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t dma);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable SPI DMA function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma</b>	SPI DMA mode
<i>SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT</i>	SPI transmit data use DMA
<i>SPI_DMA_RECEIVE</i>	SPI receive data use DMA
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 transmit data DMA function */
```

```
spi_dma_disable(SPI0, SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT);
```

### spi\_i2s\_data\_frame\_format\_config

The description of spi\_i2s\_data\_frame\_format\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-451. Function spi\_i2s\_data\_frame\_format\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config(uint32_t spi_periph, uint16_t frame_format);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure SPI/I2S data frame format
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>frame_format</b>	SPI frame size
<i>SPI_FRAME_SIZE_16BIT</i>	SPI frame size is 16 bits
<i>SPI_FRAME_SIZE_8BIT</i>	SPI frame size is 8 bits
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure SPI1/I2S1 data frame format size is 16 bits */
```

```
spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config(SPI1, SPI_FRAME_SIZE_16BIT);
```

## spi\_i2s\_data\_transmit

The description of spi\_i2s\_data\_transmit is shown as below:

**Table 3-452. Function spi\_i2s\_data\_transmit**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_i2s_data_transmit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_i2s_data_transmit(uint32_t spi_periph, uint16_t data);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	SPI transmit data
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>data</b>	16-bit data
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 transmit data */
```

```
spi_i2s_data_transmit(SPI0, spi0_send_array[send_n]);
```

## spi\_i2s\_data\_receive

The description of spi\_i2s\_data\_receive is shown as below:

**Table 3-453. Function spi\_i2s\_data\_receive**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_i2s_data_receive
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t spi_i2s_data_receive(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	SPI receive data
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint16_t</b>	16-bit data

Example:

```
/* SPI0 receive data */
```

```
spi0_receive_array[receive_n] = spi_i2s_data_receive(SPI0);
```

## spi\_bidirectional\_transfer\_config

The description of spi\_bidirectional\_transfer\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-454. Function spi\_bidirectional\_transfer\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_bidirectional_transfer_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_bidirectional_transfer_config(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t transfer_direction);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure SPI bidirectional transfer direction
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>transfer_direction</b>	SPI transfer direction
<i>SPI_BIDIRECTIONAL_</i>	SPI work in transmit-only mode



<i>TRANSMIT</i>	
<i>SPI_BIDIRECTIONAL_RECEIVE</i>	SPI work in receive-only mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 works in transmit-only mode */
```

```
spi_bidirectional_transfer_config(SPI0, SPI_BIDIRECTIONAL_TRANSMIT);
```

## spi\_crc\_polynomial\_set

The description of spi\_crc\_polynomial\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-455. Function spi\_crc\_polynomial\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_crc_polynomial_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_crc_polynomial_set(uint32_t spi_periph, uint16_t crc_poly);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set SPI CRC polynomial
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>crc_poly</b>	CRC polynomial value
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set SPI0 CRC polynomial */
```

```
spi_crc_polynomial_set(SPI0,CRC_VALUE);
```

## spi\_crc\_polynomial\_get

The description of spi\_crc\_polynomial\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-456. Function spi\_crc\_polynomial\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_crc_polynomial_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t spi_crc_polynomial_get(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get SPI CRC polynomial

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint16_t</b>	16-bit CRC polynomial (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get SPI0 CRC polynomial */
uint16_t crc_val;
crc_val = spi_crc_polynomial_get(SPI0);
```

## spi\_crc\_on

The description of spi\_crc\_on is shown as below:

**Table 3-457. Function spi\_crc\_on**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_crc_on
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_crc_on(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	turn on SPI CRC function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn on SPI0 CRC function */
spi_crc_on(SPI0);
```

## spi\_crc\_off

The description of spi\_crc\_off is shown as below:

**Table 3-458. Function spi\_crc\_off**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_crc_off
----------------------	-------------

<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_crc_off(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	turn off SPI CRC function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn off SPI0 CRC function */
```

```
spi_crc_off(SPI0);
```

## spi\_crc\_next

The description of spi\_crc\_next is shown as below:

**Table 3-459. Function spi\_crc\_next**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_crc_next
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_crc_next(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	SPI next data is CRC value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 next data is CRC value */
```

```
spi_crc_next(SPI0);
```

## spi\_crc\_get

The description of spi\_crc\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-460. Function spi\_crc\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_crc_get
----------------------	-------------

<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t spi_crc_get(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t crc);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get SPI CRC send value or receive value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>crc</b>	SPI crc value
<i>SPI_CRC_TX</i>	get transmit crc value
<i>SPI_CRC_RX</i>	get receive crc value
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint16_t</b>	16-bit CRC value (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get SPI0 CRC send value */
uint16_t crc_val;
crc_val = spi_crc_get(SPI0, SPI_CRC_TX);
```

## spi\_ti\_mode\_enable

The description of spi\_ti\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-461. Function spi\_ti\_mode\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_ti_mode_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_ti_mode_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable SPI TI mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 TI mode */
spi_ti_mode_enable(SPI0);
```

## **spi\_ti\_mode\_disable**

The description of spi\_ti\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-462. Function spi\_ti\_mode\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_ti_mode_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_ti_mode_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable SPI TI mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 TI mode */
spi_ti_mode_disable(SPI0);
```

## **spi\_nssp\_mode\_enable**

The description of spi\_nssp\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-463. Function spi\_nssp\_mode\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_nssp_mode_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_nssp_mode_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable SPI NSS pulse mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 NSS pulse mode */
spi_nssp_mode_enable(SPI0);
```

## **spi\_nssp\_mode\_disable**

The description of spi\_nssp\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-464. Function spi\_nssp\_mode\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_nssp_mode_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_nssp_mode_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable SPI NSS pulse mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 NSS pulse mode */
spi_nssp_mode_disable(SPI0);
```

## **spi\_quad\_enable**

The description of spi\_quad\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-465. Function spi\_quad\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_quad_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_quad_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable quad wire SPI
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 quad wire mode */
spi_quad_enable(SPI0);
```

## **spi\_quad\_disable**

The description of spi\_quad\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-466. Function spi\_quad\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_quad_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	spi_quad_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable quad wire SPI
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 quad wire mode */
```

```
spi_quad_disable(SPI0);
```

## **spi\_quad\_write\_enable**

The description of spi\_quad\_write\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-467. Function spi\_quad\_write\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_quad_write_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_quad_write_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable quad wire SPI write
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 quad wire write */
```

```
spi_quad_write_enable(SPI0);
```

## **spi\_quad\_read\_enable**

The description of spi\_quad\_read\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-468. Function spi\_quad\_read\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_quad_read_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_quad_read_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable quad wire SPI read
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 quad wire read */
```

```
spi_quad_read_enable(SPI0);
```

## **spi\_quad\_io23\_output\_enable**

The description of spi\_quad\_io23\_output\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-469. Function spi\_quad\_io23\_output\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_quad_io23_output_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_quad_io23_output_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output */
```

```
spi_quad_io23_output_enable(SPI0);
```



## **spi\_quad\_io23\_output\_disable**

The description of spi\_quad\_io23\_output\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-470. Function spi\_quad\_io23\_output\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_quad_io23_output_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_quad_io23_output_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output */
```

```
spi_quad_io23_output_disable(SPI0);
```

## **spi\_i2s\_interrupt\_enable**

The description of spi\_i2s\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-471. Function spi\_i2s\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_i2s_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_i2s_interrupt_enable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable SPI and I2S interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	SPI/I2S interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_TBE</i>	transmit buffer empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_RBNE</i>	receive buffer not empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_ERR</i>	CRC error,configuration error,reception overrun error, transmission underrun error and format error interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 transmit buffer empty interrupt */
```

```
spi_i2s_interrupt_enable(SPI0, SPI_I2S_INT_TBE);
```

## spi\_i2s\_interrupt\_disable

The description of spi\_i2s\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-472. Function spi\_i2s\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_i2s_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_i2s_interrupt_disable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable SPI and I2S interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	SPI/I2S interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_TBE</i>	transmit buffer empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_RBNE</i>	receive buffer not empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_ERR</i>	CRC error,configuration error,reception overrun error, transmission underrun error and format error interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 transmit buffer empty interrupt */
```

```
spi_i2s_interrupt_disable(SPI0, SPI_I2S_INT_TBE);
```

## spi\_i2s\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of spi\_i2s\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-473. Function spi\_i2s\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get SPI and I2S interrupt status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
<b>interrupt</b>	SPI/I2S interrupt flag status
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_TBE</i>	transmit buffer empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_RBNE</i>	receive buffer not empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_RXORERR</i>	overrun interrupt
<i>SPI_INT_FLAG_CONFERR</i>	config error interrupt
<i>SPI_INT_FLAG_CRCERR</i>	CRC error interrupt
<i>I2S_INT_FLAG_TXURERR</i>	underrun error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```

/* get SPI0 transmit buffer empty interrupt status */

if(RESET != spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get(SPI0, SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_TBE)){
    while(RESET == spi_i2s_flag_get(SPI0, SPI_FLAG_TBE));
    spi_i2s_data_transmit(SPI0, spi0_send_array[send_n++]);
}

```

## spi\_i2s\_flag\_get

The description of spi\_i2s\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-474. Function spi\_i2s\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_i2s_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus spi_i2s_flag_get(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get SPI and I2S flag status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2

Input parameter{in}	
<b>flag</b>	SPI/I2S flag status
<i>SPI_FLAG_TBE</i>	transmit buffer empty flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_RBNE</i>	receive buffer not empty flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_TRANS</i>	transmit on-going flag
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_RXORERR</i>	receive overrun error flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_CONFERR</i>	mode config error flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_CRCERR</i>	CRC error flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_RXORERR</i>	overrun error flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_TXURERR</i>	underrun error flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_CH</i>	channel side flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get SPI0 transmit buffer empty flag status */
while(RESET == spi_i2s_flag_get(SPI0, SPI_FLAG_TBE));
spi_i2s_data_transmit(SPI0, spi0_send_array[send_n++]);
```

## spi\_crc\_error\_clear

The description of spi\_crc\_error\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-475. Function spi\_crc\_error\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	spi_crc_error_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void spi_crc_error_clear(uint32_t spi_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear SPI CRC error flag status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>spi_periph</b>	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear SPI0 CRC error flag status */
```

```
spi_crc_error_clear(SPI0);
```

## 3.21. TIMER

The timers have a 16-bit counter that can be used as an unsigned counter and supports both input capture and output compare. Timers (TIMERx) are divided into five sorts: advanced timer (TIMERx, x=0, 7), general level0 timer (TIMERx, x=1, 2, 3, 4), general level1 timer (TIMERx, x=8, 11), general level2 timer (TIMERx, x=9, 10, 12, 13), Basic timer (TIMERx, x=5, 6). The specific functions of different types of timer are different. The TIMER registers are listed in chapter [3.21.1](#), the TIMER firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.21.2](#).

### 3.21.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

TIMERx registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-476. TIMERx Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
TIMER_CTL0	Control register 0
TIMER_CTL1	Control register 1
TIMER_SMCFG	Slave mode configuration register
TIMER_DMAINTEN	DMA and interrupt enable register
TIMER_INTF	Interrupt flag register
TIMER_SWEVG	Software event generation register
TIMER_CHCTL0	Channel control register 0
TIMER_CHCTL1	Channel control register 1
TIMER_CHCTL2	Channel control register 2
TIMER_CNT	Counter register
TIMER_PSC	Prescaler register
TIMER_CAR	Counter auto reload register
TIMER_CREP	Counter repetition register
TIMER_CH0CV	Channel 0 capture/compare value register
TIMER_CH1CV	Channel 1 capture/compare value register
TIMER_CH2CV	Channel 2 capture/compare value register
TIMER_CH3CV	Channel 3 capture/compare value register
TIMER_CCHP	Channel complementary protection register
TIMER_DMACFG	DMA configuration register
TIMER_DMATB	DMA transfer buffer register
TIMER_CFG	Configuration register

### 3.21.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

The description format of firmware functions are shown as below:

**Table 3-477. TIMERx firmware function**

Function name	Function description
timer_deinit	deinit a timer
timer_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER init parameter struct with the default values
timer_init	initialize TIMER counter
timer_enable	enable a timer
timer_disable	disable a timer
timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable	enable the auto reload shadow function
timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable	disable the auto reload shadow function
timer_update_event_enable	enable the update event
timer_update_event_disable	disable the update event
timer_counter_alignment	set TIMER counter alignment mode
timer_counter_up_direction	set TIMER counter up direction
timer_counter_down_direction	set TIMER counter down direction
timer_prescaler_config	configure TIMER prescaler
timer_repetition_value_config	configure TIMER repetition register value
timer_autoreload_value_config	configure TIMER autoreload register value
timer_counter_value_config	configure TIMER counter register value
timer_counter_read	read TIMER counter value
timer_prescaler_read	read TIMER prescaler value
timer_single_pulse_mode_config	configure TIMER single pulse mode
timer_update_source_config	configure TIMER update source
timer_dma_enable	enable the TIMER DMA
timer_dma_disable	disable the TIMER DMA
timer_channel_dma_request_source_select	channel DMA request source selection
timer_dma_transfer_config	configure the TIMER DMA transfer
timer_event_software_generate	software generate events
timer_break_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER break parameter struct with the default values
timer_break_config	configure TIMER break function
timer_break_enable	enable TIMER break function
timer_break_disable	disable TIMER break function
timer_automatic_output_enable	enable TIMER output automatic function
timer_automatic_output_disable	disable TIMER output automatic function
timer_primary_output_config	configure TIMER primary output function
timer_channel_control_shadow_config	channel capture/compare control shadow register enable
timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config	configure TIMER channel control shadow register update control
timer_channel_output_struct	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel output

Function name	Function description
_para_init	parameter struct with the default values
timer_channel_output_config	configure TIMER channel output function
timer_channel_output_mode_config	configure TIMER channel output compare mode
timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config	configure TIMER channel output pulse value
timer_channel_output_shadow_config	configure TIMER channel output shadow function
timer_channel_output_fast_config	configure TIMER channel output fast function
timer_channel_output_clear_config	configure TIMER channel output clear function
timer_channel_output_polarity_config	configure TIMER channel output polarity
timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config	configure TIMER channel complementary output polarity
timer_channel_output_state_config	configure TIMER channel enable state
timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config	configure TIMER channel complementary output enable state
timer_channel_input_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel input parameter struct with the default values
timer_input_capture_config	configure TIMER input capture parameter
timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config	configure TIMER channel input capture prescaler value
timer_channel_capture_value_register_read	read TIMER channel capture compare register value
timer_input_pwm_capture_config	configure TIMER input pwm capture function
timer_hall_mode_config	configure TIMER hall sensor mode
timer_input_trigger_source_select	select TIMER input trigger source
timer_master_output_trigger_source_select	select TIMER master mode output trigger source
timer_slave_mode_select	select TIMER slave mode
timer_master_slave_mode_config	configure TIMER master slave mode
timer_external_trigger_config	configure TIMER external trigger input
timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config	configure TIMER quadrature decoder mode
timer_internal_clock_config	configure TIMER internal clock mode
timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config	configure TIMER the internal trigger as external clock input
timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config	configure TIMER the external trigger as external clock input
timer_external_clock_mode0_config	configure TIMER the external clock mode 0
timer_external_clock_mode1_config	configure TIMER the external clock mode 1
timer_external_clock_mode1_disable	disable TIMER the external clock mode 1

Function name	Function description
timer_write_chxval_register_config	configure TIMER write CHxVAL register selection
timer_output_value_selection_config	configure TIMER output value selection
timer_interrupt_enable	enable the TIMER interrupt
timer_interrupt_disable	disable the TIMER interrupt
timer_interrupt_flag_get	get timer interrupt flag
timer_interrupt_flag_clear	clear TIMER interrupt flag
timer_flag_get	get TIMER flags
timer_flag_clear	clear TIMER flags

### Structure timer\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-478. Structure timer\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
prescaler	prescaler value (0~65535)
alignedmode	aligned mode (TIMER_COUNTER_EDGE, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_DOWN, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_UP, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_BOTH)
counterdirection	counter direction (TIMER_COUNTER_UP, TIMER_COUNTER_DOWN)
period	period value (0~65535)
clockdivision	clock division value (TIMER_CKDIV_DIV1, TIMER_CKDIV_DIV2, TIMER_CKDIV_DIV4)
repetitioncounter	the counter repetition value (0~255)

### Structure timer\_break\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-479. Structure timer\_break\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
runoffstate	run mode off-state (TIMER_ROS_STATE_ENABLE, TIMER_ROS_STATE_DISABLE)
ideloffstate	idle mode off-state (TIMER_IOS_STATE_ENABLE, TIMER_IOS_STATE_DISABLE)
deadtime	dead time (0~255)
breakpolarity	break polarity (TIMER_BREAK_POLARITY_LOW, TIMER_BREAK_POLARITY_HIGH)
outputautostate	output automatic enable (TIMER_OUTAUTO_ENABLE, TIMER_OUTAUTO_DISABLE)
protectmode	complementary register protect control (TIMER_CCHP_PROT_OFF, TIMER_CCHP_PROT_0, TIMER_CCHP_PROT_1, TIMER_CCHP_PROT_2)
breakstate	break enable (TIMER_BREAK_ENABLE, TIMER_BREAK_DISABLE)



## Structure timer\_oc\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-480. Structure timer\_oc\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
outputstate	channel output state (TIMER_CCX_ENABLE, TIMER_CCX_DISABLE)
outputnstate	channel complementary output state (TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE, TIMER_CCXN_DISABLE)
ocpolarity	channel output polarity (TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH, TIMER_OC_POLARITY_LOW)
ocnpolarity	channel complementary output polarity (TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH, TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_LOW)
ocidlestate	idle state of channel output (TIMER_OC_IDLE_STATE_LOW, TIMER_OC_IDLE_STATE_HIGH)
ocnidlestate	idle state of channel complementary output (TIMER_OCN_IDLE_STATE_LOW, TIMER_OCN_IDLE_STATE_HIGH)

## Structure timer\_ic\_parameter\_struct

**Table 3-481. Structure timer\_ic\_parameter\_struct**

Member name	Function description
icpolarity	channel input polarity (TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_BOTH_EDGE)
icselection	channel input mode selection (TIMER_IC_SELECTION_DIRECTTI, TIMER_IC_SELECTION_INDIRECTTI, TIMER_IC_SELECTION_ITS)
icprescaler	channel input capture prescaler (TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1, TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV2, TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV4, TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV8)
icfilter	channel input capture filter control (0~15)

## timer\_deinit

The description of timer\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-482. Function timer\_deinit**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_deinit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_deinit(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	deinit a TIMER
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<b>TIMERx(x=0..13)</b>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* reset TIMER0 */
```

```
timer_deinit (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_struct\_para\_init

The description of timer\_struct\_para\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-483. Function timer\_struct\_para\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_struct_para_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_struct_para_init(timer_parameter_struct* initpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize the parameters of TIMER init parameter struct with the default values
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>initpara</b>	TIMER init parameter struct, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-478. Structure timer_parameter_struct</a> .
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER init parameter struct with a default value */
```

```
timer_parameter_struct timer_initpara;
```

```
timer_struct_para_init(timer_initpara);
```

## timer\_init

The description of timer\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-484. Function timer\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_init(uint32_t timer_periph, timer_parameter_struct* initpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize TIMER counter
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection

Input parameter{in}	
<b>initpara</b>	TIMER init parameter struct, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-478. Structure timer parameter struct</a> .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER0 */

timer_parameter_struct timer_initpara;

timer_initpara.prescaler      = 107;

timer_initpara.alignedmode    = TIMER_COUNTER_EDGE;

timer_initpara.counterdirection = TIMER_COUNTER_UP;

timer_initpara.period         = 999;

timer_initpara.clockdivision   = TIMER_CKDIV_DIV1;

timer_initpara.repetitioncounter = 1;

timer_init(TIMER0,&timer_initpara);
```

## timer\_enable

The description of timer\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-485. Function timer\_enable**

Function name	timer_enable
Function prototype	void timer_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable a timer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 */

timer_enable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_disable

The description of timer\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-486. Function timer\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_disable(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable a timer
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 */
timer_disable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_auto\_reload\_shadow\_enable

The description of timer\_auto\_reload\_shadow\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-487. Function timer\_auto\_reload\_shadow\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the auto reload shadow function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the TIMER0 auto reload shadow function */
timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_auto\_reload\_shadow\_disable

The description of timer\_auto\_reload\_shadow\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-488. Function timer\_auto\_reload\_shadow\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable (uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the auto reload shadow function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the TIMER0 auto reload shadow function */
```

```
timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_update\_event\_enable

The description of timer\_update\_event\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-489. Function timer\_update\_event\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_update_event_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_update_event_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the update event
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 the update event */
```

```
timer_update_event_enable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_update\_event\_disable

The description of timer\_update\_event\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-490. Function timer\_update\_event\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_update_event_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_update_event_disable (uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the update event
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 the update event */
timer_update_event_disable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_counter\_alignment

The description of timer\_counter\_alignment is shown as below:

**Table 3-491. Function timer\_counter\_alignment**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_counter_alignment
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_counter_alignment(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t aligned);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set TIMER counter alignment mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>aligned</b>	alignment mode
<i>TIMER_COUNTER_EDGE</i>	No center-aligned mode (edge-aligned mode). The direction of the counter is specified by the DIR bit.
<i>TIMER_COUNTER_COUNTER_DOWN</i>	Center-aligned and counting down assert mode. The counter counts under center aligned and channel is configured in output mode (CHxMS=00 in <i>TIMERx_CHCTL0</i> register). Only when the counter is counting down, compare interrupt flag of channels can be set.
<i>TIMER_COUNTER_COUNTER_UP</i>	Center-aligned and counting up assert mode. The counter counts under

<i>NTER_UP</i>	center aligned and channel is configured in output mode (CHxMS=00 in TIMERx_CHCTL0register). Only when the counter is counting up, compare interrupt flag of channels can be set.
<i>TIMER_COUNTER_CE NTER_BOTH</i>	Center-aligned and counting up/down assert mode. The counter counts under center-aligned and channel is configured in output mode (CHxMS=00 in TIMERx_CHCTL0 register). Both when the counter is counting up and counting down, compare interrupt flag of channels can be set.
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set TIMER0 counter center-aligned and counting up assert mode */
timer_counter_alignment (TIMER0, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_UP);
```

## timer\_counter\_up\_direction

The description of timer\_counter\_up\_direction is shown as below:

**Table 3-492. Function timer\_counter\_up\_direction**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_counter_up_direction
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_counter_up_direction(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set TIMER counter up direction
<b>Precondition</b>	set TIMER counter no center-aligned mode (edge-aligned mode)
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set TIMER0 counter up direction */
timer_counter_up_direction (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_counter\_down\_direction

The description of timer\_counter\_down\_direction is shown as below:

**Table 3-493. timer\_counter\_down\_direction**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_counter_down_direction
----------------------	------------------------------

<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_counter_ down _direction(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	set TIMER counter down direction
<b>Precondition</b>	set TIMER counter no center-aligned mode (edge-aligned mode)
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set TIMER0 counter down direction */
```

```
timer_counter_down_direction (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_prescaler\_config

The description of timer\_prescaler\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-494. Function timer\_prescaler\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_prescaler_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_prescaler_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t prescaler, uint8_t pscreload);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER prescaler
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>prescaler</b>	prescaler value (0~65535)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pscreload</b>	prescaler reload mode
<i>TIMER_PSC_RELOAD_NOW</i>	the prescaler is loaded right now
<i>TIMER_PSC_RELOAD_UPDATE</i>	the prescaler is loaded at the next update event
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:



```
/* configure TIMER0 prescaler */
```

```
timer_prescaler_config (TIMER0, 3000, TIMER_PSC_RELOAD_NOW);
```

## timer\_repetition\_value\_config

The description of timer\_repetition\_value\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-495. Function timer\_repetition\_value\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_repetition_value_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_repetition_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t repetition);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER repetition register value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>repetition</b>	the counter repetition value (0~255)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 repetition register value */
```

```
timer_repetition_value_config (TIMER0, 98);
```

## timer\_autoreload\_value\_config

The description of timer\_autoreload\_value\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-496. Function timer\_autoreload\_value\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_autoreload_value_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_autoreload_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t autoreload);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER autoreload register value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>autoreload</b>	the counter auto-reload value (0-0xFFFF)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER autoreload register value */
timer_autoreload_value_config (TIMER0, 3000);
```

## timer\_counter\_value\_config

The description of timer\_counter\_value\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-497. Function timer\_counter\_value\_config**

Function name	timer_counter_value_config
Function prototype	void timer_counter_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t counter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER counter register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
counter	the counter value (0-0xFFFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 counter register value */
timer_counter_value_config (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_counter\_read

The description of timer\_counter\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-498. Function timer\_counter\_read**

Function name	timer_counter_read
Function prototype	uint32_t timer_counter_read(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	read TIMER counter value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint32_t</b>	counter value(0x0000~0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read TIMER0 counter value */

uint32_t i = 0;

i = timer_counter_read (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_prescaler\_read

The description of timer\_prescaler\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-499. Function timer\_prescaler\_read**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_prescaler_read
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t timer_prescaler_read(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	read TIMER prescaler value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint16_t</b>	prescaler register value (0x0000~0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read TIMER0 prescaler value */

uint16_t i = 0;

i = timer_prescaler_read (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_single\_pulse\_mode\_config

The description of timer\_single\_pulse\_mode\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-500. Function timer\_single\_pulse\_mode\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_single_pulse_mode_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_single_pulse_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t spmode);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER single pulse mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>spmode</b>	pulse mode
<i>TIMER_SP_MODE_SINGLE</i>	single pulse mode
<i>TIMER_SP_MODE_REPETITIVE</i>	repetitive pulse mode
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 single pulse mode */
```

```
timer_single_pulse_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_SP_MODE_SINGLE);
```

### timer\_update\_source\_config

The description of timer\_update\_source\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-501. Function timer\_update\_source\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_update_source_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_update_source_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t update);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER update source
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>update</b>	update source
<i>TIMER_UPDATE_SRC_GLOBAL</i>	Any of the following events generate an update interrupt or DMA request: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The UPG bit is set</li> <li>- The counter generates an overflow or underflow event</li> <li>- The slave mode controller generates an update event</li> </ul>
<i>TIMER_UPDATE_SRC_REGULAR</i>	Only counter overflow/underflow generates an update interrupt or DMA request.
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER update only by counter overflow/underflow */
```

```
timer_update_source_config (TIMER0, TIMER_UPDATE_SRC_REGULAR);
```

### timer\_dma\_enable

The description of timer\_dma\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-502. Function timer\_dma\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_dma_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_dma_enable(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t dma);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the TIMER DMA
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma</b>	timer DMA source enable
<i>TIMER_DMA_UPD</i>	update DMA enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH0D</i>	channel 0 DMA enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH1D</i>	channel 1 DMA enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH2D</i>	channel 2 DMA enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH3D</i>	channel 3 DMA enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CMTD</i>	commutation DMA request enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_TRGD</i>	trigger DMA enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the TIMER0 update DMA */
```

```
timer_dma_enable (TIMER0, TIMER_DMA_UPD);
```

### timer\_dma\_disable

The description of timer\_dma\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-503. Function timer\_dma\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_dma_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_dma_disable (uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t dma);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the TIMER DMA
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma</b>	timer DMA source disable
<i>TIMER_DMA_UPD</i>	update DMA disable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH0D</i>	channel 0 DMA disable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH1D</i>	channel 1 DMA disable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH2D</i>	channel 2 DMA disable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH3D</i>	channel 3 DMA disable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CMTD</i>	commutation DMA request disable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_TRGD</i>	trigger DMA disable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the TIMER0 update DMA */
```

```
timer_dma_disable (TIMER0, TIMER_DMA_UPD);
```

## timer\_channel\_dma\_request\_source\_select

The description of timer\_channel\_dma\_request\_source\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-504. Function timer\_channel\_dma\_request\_source\_select**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_dma_request_source_select
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_dma_request_source_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t dma_request);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	channel DMA request source selection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_request</b>	channel DMA request source selection

<i>TIMER_DMAREQUEST_CHANNELEVENT</i>	DMA request of channel n is sent when channel y event occurs
<i>TIMER_DMAREQUEST_UPDATEEVENT</i>	DMA request of channel n is sent when update event occurs
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* TIMER0 channel DMA request of channel n is sent when channel y event occurs */
timer_channel_dma_request_source_select(TIMER0,
TIMER_DMAREQUEST_CHANNELEVENT);
```

## timer\_dma\_transfer\_config

The description of timer\_dma\_transfer\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-505. Function timer\_dma\_transfer\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_dma_transfer_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_dma_transfer_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t dma_baseaddr, uint32_t dma_lenth);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the TIMER DMA transfer
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_baseaddr</b>	DMA transfer access start address
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_CTL0</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CTL0, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_CTL1</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CTL1, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_SMCFG</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_SMCFG, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_DMAINTEN</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_DMAINTEN, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_INTF</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_INTF, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_SWEVG</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_SWEVG, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CHCTL0, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)

<i>TA_CHCTL0</i>	
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CHCTL1</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CHCTL1</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CHCTL2</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CHCTL2</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CNT</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CNT</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_PSC</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_PSC</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CAR</i>	MA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CAR</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CREP</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CREP</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CH0CV</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CH0CV</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CH1CV</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CH1CV</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CH2CV</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CH2CV</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CH3CV</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CH3CV</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_CCHP</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CCHP</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_DMACFG</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_DMACFG</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_DMATB</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_DMATB</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dma_lenth</b>	DMA transfer count
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TC_xTRANSFER</i>	<i>x</i> =1..18, DMA transfer <i>x</i> time
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the TIMER0 DMA transfer */
```

```
timer_dma_transfer_config(TIMER0, TIMER_DMACFG_DMATA_CTL0,  
TIMER_DMACFG_DMATC_5TRANSFER);
```



## timer\_event\_software\_generate

The description of timer\_event\_software\_generate is shown as below:

**Table 3-506. Function timer\_event\_software\_generate**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_event_software_generate
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_event_software_generate(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t event);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	software generate events
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>event</b>	the timer software event generation sources
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_UPG</i>	update event, TIMERx(x=0..13)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_CH0G</i>	channel 0 capture or compare event generation, TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_CH1G</i>	channel 1 capture or compare event generation, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_CH2G</i>	channel 2 capture or compare event generation, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_CH3G</i>	channel 3 capture or compare event generation, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_CMTG</i>	channel commutation event generation, TIMERx(x=0,7)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_TRIGG</i>	trigger event generation, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_BREAK</i>	break event generation, TIMERx(x=0,7)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* software generate update event*/
```

```
timer_event_software_generate (TIMER0, TIMER_EVENT_SRC_UPG);
```

## timer\_break\_struct\_para\_init

The description of timer\_break\_struct\_para\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-507. Function timer\_break\_struct\_para\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_break_struct_para_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_break_struct_para_init(timer_break_parameter_struct* breakpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize the parameters of TIMER break parameter struct with the default values
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>breakpara</b>	TIMER break parameter struct, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-479. Structure timer break parameter struct.</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER break parameter struct with a default value */
```

```
timer_break_parameter_struct timer_breakpara;
```

```
timer_break_struct_para_init(timer_breakpara);
```

## timer\_break\_config

The description of timer\_break\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-508. Function timer\_break\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_break_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_break_config(uint32_t timer_periph, timer_break_parameter_struct* breakpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER break function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>breakpara</b>	TIMER break parameter struct, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-479. Structure timer break parameter struct.</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 break function */

timer_break_parameter_struct timer_breakpara;

timer_breakpara.runoffstate      = TIMER_ROS_STATE_DISABLE;
timer_breakpara.ideloffstate     = TIMER_IOS_STATE_DISABLE ;
timer_breakpara.deadtime         = 255;
timer_breakpara.breakpolarity    = TIMER_BREAK_POLARITY_LOW;
timer_breakpara.outputautostate  = TIMER_OUTAUTO_ENABLE;
timer_breakpara.protectmode      = TIMER_CCHP_PROT_0;
timer_breakpara.breakstate       = TIMER_BREAK_ENABLE;

timer_break_config(TIMER0, &timer_breakpara);
```

## timer\_break\_enable

The description of timer\_break\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-509. Function timer\_break\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_break_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_break_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable TIMER break function
<b>Precondition</b>	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filed in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 break function*/

timer_break_enable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_break\_disable

The description of timer\_break\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-510. Function timer\_break\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_break_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_break_disable(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable TIMER break function
<b>Precondition</b>	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filed in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 break function*/
```

```
timer_break_disable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_automatic\_output\_enable

The description of timer\_automatic\_output\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-511. Function timer\_automatic\_output\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_automatic_output_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_automatic_output_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable TIMER output automatic function
<b>Precondition</b>	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filed in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 output automatic function */
```

```
timer_automatic_output_enable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_automatic\_output\_disable

The description of timer\_automatic\_output\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-512. Function timer\_automatic\_output\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_automatic_output_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_automatic_output_disable (uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable TIMER output automatic function
<b>Precondition</b>	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filed in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMERO0 output automatic function */
```

```
timer_automatic_output_disable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_primary\_output\_config

The description of timer\_primary\_output\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-513. Function timer\_primary\_output\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_primary_output_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_primary_output_config(uint32_t timer_periph, ControlStatus newvalue);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER primary output function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>newvalue</b>	control value
<i>ENABLE</i>	enable function
<i>DISABLE</i>	disable function
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 primary output function */
```

```
timer_primary_output_config (TIMER0, ENABLE);
```

## timer\_channel\_control\_shadow\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_control\_shadow\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-514. Function timer\_channel\_control\_shadow\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_control_shadow_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_control_shadow_config(uint32_t timer_periph, ControlStatus newvalue);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	channel commutation control shadow register enable
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>newvalue</b>	control value
<i>ENABLE</i>	enable function
<i>DISABLE</i>	disable function
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* channel capture/compare control shadow register enable */
```

```
timer_channel_control_shadow_config (TIMER0, ENABLE);
```

## timer\_channel\_control\_shadow\_update\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_control\_shadow\_update\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-515. Function timer\_channel\_control\_shadow\_update\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t ccuctl);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure commutation control shadow register update control
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>ccuctl</b>	channel control shadow register update control
<i>TIMER_UPDATECTL_CCU</i>	the shadow registers update by when CMTG bit is set
<i>TIMER_UPDATECTL_CUTRI</i>	the shadow registers update by when CMTG bit is set or an rising edge of TRGI occurs
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel control shadow register update when CMTG bit is set */
timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config (TIMER0, TIMER_UPDATECTL_CCU);
```

## timer\_channel\_output\_struct\_para\_init

The description of timer\_channel\_output\_struct\_para\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-516. Function timer\_channel\_output\_struct\_para\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_output_struct_para_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_output_struct_para_init(timer_oc_parameter_struct* ocpa);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel output parameter struct with the default values
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>ocpara</b>	TIMER channel output parameter struct, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-480. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct</a> .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER channel output parameter struct with a default value */
timer_oc_parameter_struct timer_ocinitpara;
timer_channel_output_struct_para_init(timer_ocinitpara);
```

## timer\_channel\_output\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_output\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-517. Function timer\_channel\_output\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_output_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_output_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, timer_oc_parameter_struct* ocpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel output function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ocpara</b>	TIMER channel output parameter struct, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-480. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct.</a>
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output function */

timer_oc_parameter_struct timer_ocinitpara;

timer_ocinitpara.outputstate = TIMER_CCX_ENABLE;

timer_ocinitpara.outputnstate = TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE;

timer_ocinitpara.ocpolarity = TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH;

timer_ocinitpara.ocnpolarity = TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH;

timer_ocinitpara.ocidlestate = TIMER_OC_IDLE_STATE_HIGH;

timer_ocinitpara.ocnidlestate = TIMER_OCN_IDLE_STATE_LOW;

timer_channel_output_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, &timer_ocinitpara);

```



## timer\_channel\_output\_mode\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_output\_mode\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-518. Function timer\_channel\_output\_mode\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_output_mode_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_output_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocmode);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel output compare mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ocmode</b>	channel output compare mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_TIMING</i>	timing mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_ACTIVE</i>	set the channel output
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_INACTIVE</i>	clear the channel output
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_TOGGLE</i>	toggle on match
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_LOW</i>	force low mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_HIGH</i>	force high mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_PWM0</i>	PWM mode 0
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_PWM1</i>	PWM mode 1
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel PWM 0 mode */
```

```
timer_channel_output_mode_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, TIMER_OC_MODE_PWM0);
```

## timer\_channel\_output\_pulse\_value\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_output\_pulse\_value\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-519. Function timer\_channel\_output\_pulse\_value\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint32_t pulse);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel output pulse value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>pulse</b>	channel output pulse value (0~65535)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output pulse value */
```

```
timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, 399);
```

## timer\_channel\_output\_shadow\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_output\_shadow\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-520. Function timer\_channel\_output\_shadow\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_output_shadow_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_output_shadow_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocshadow);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel output shadow function
<b>Precondition</b>	-

<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ocshadow</b>	channel output shadow state
<i>TIMER_OC_SHADOW_ENABLE</i>	channel output shadow state enable
<i>TIMER_OC_SHADOW_DISABLE</i>	channel output shadow state disable
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/*configure TIMER0 channel 0 output shadow function */
```

```
timer_channel_output_shadow_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,  
TIMER_OC_SHADOW_ENABLE);
```

## timer\_channel\_output\_fast\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_output\_fast\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-521. Function timer\_channel\_output\_fast\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_output_fast_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_output_fast_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocfast);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel output fast function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))

<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ocfast</b>	channel output fast function
<i>TIMER_OC_FAST_ENABLE</i>	channel output fast function enable
<i>TIMER_OC_FAST_DISABLE</i>	channel output fast function disable
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output fast function */
```

```
timer_channel_output_fast_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, TIMER_OC_FAST_ENABLE);
```

## timer\_channel\_output\_clear\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_output\_clear\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-522. Function timer\_channel\_output\_clear\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_output_clear_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_output_clear_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t occlear);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel output clear function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER periph
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>occlear</b>	channel output clear function
<i>TIMER_OC_CLEAR_ENABLE</i>	channel output clear function enable
<i>TIMER_OC_CLEAR_DISABLE</i>	channel output clear function disable

<i>SABLE</i>	
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output clear function */
```

```
timer_channel_output_clear_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,  
TIMER_OC_CLEAR_ENABLE);
```

## timer\_channel\_output\_polarity\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_output\_polarity\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-523. Function timer\_channel\_output\_polarity\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_output_polarity_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_output_polarity_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocpolarity);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel output polarity
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ocpolarity</b>	channel output polarity
<i>TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH</i>	channel output polarity is high
<i>TIMER_OC_POLARITY_LOW</i>	channel output polarity is low
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output polarity */
```

```
timer_channel_output_polarity_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,  
TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH);
```

## timer\_channel\_complementary\_output\_polarity\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_complementary\_output\_polarity\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-524. Function timer\_channel\_complementary\_output\_polarity\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocpolarity);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel complementary output polarity
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ocpolarity</b>	channel complementary output polarity
<i>TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH</i>	channel complementary output polarity is high
<i>TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_LOW</i>	channel complementary output polarity is low
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 complementary output polarity */
```

```
timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,  
TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH);
```

## timer\_channel\_output\_state\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_output\_state\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-525. Function timer\_channel\_output\_state\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_output_state_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_output_state_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint32_t state);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel enable state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>state</b>	TIMER channel enable state
<i>TIMER_CCX_ENABLE</i>	channel enable
<i>TIMER_CCX_DISABLE</i>	channel disable
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 enable state */
```

```
timer_channel_output_state_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, TIMER_CCX_ENABLE);
```

## timer\_channel\_complementary\_output\_state\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_complementary\_output\_state\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-526. Function timer\_channel\_complementary\_output\_state\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocnstate);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel complementary output enable state
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection

Input parameter{in}	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2
Input parameter{in}	
<b>state</b>	TIMER channel complementary output enable state
<i>TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE</i>	channel complementary enable
<i>TIMER_CCXN_DISABLE</i>	channel complementary disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 complementary output enable state */
```

```
timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,  
TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE);
```

### timer\_channel\_input\_struct\_para\_init

The description of timer\_channel\_input\_struct\_para\_init is shown as below:

**Table 3-527. Function timer\_channel\_input\_struct\_para\_init**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_input_struct_para_init
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_input_struct_para_init(timer_ic_parameter_struct* icpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel input parameter struct with the default values
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>icpara</b>	TIMER channel input parameter struct, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-481. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct</a> .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER channel input parameter struct with a default value */
```

```
timer_ic_parameter_struct timer_icinitpara;
```



```
timer_channel_input_struct_para_init(timer_icinitpara);
```

## timer\_input\_capture\_config

The description of timer\_input\_capture\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-528. Function timer\_input\_capture\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_input_capture_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_input_capture_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, timer_ic_parameter_struct* icpara);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER input capture parameter
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>icpara</b>	TIMER channel input parameter struct, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-481. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct</a> .
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 input capture parameter */
timer_ic_parameter_struct timer_icinitpara;
timer_icinitpara.icpolarity = TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING;
timer_icinitpara.icselection = TIMER_IC_SELECTION_DIRECTTTI;
timer_icinitpara.icprescaler = TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1;
timer_icinitpara.icfilter = 0x0;
timer_input_capture_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, &timer_icinitpara);
```

## timer\_channel\_input\_capture\_prescaler\_config

The description of timer\_channel\_input\_capture\_prescaler\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-529. Function timer\_channel\_input\_capture\_prescaler\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t prescaler);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER channel input capture prescaler value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>prescaler</b>	channel input capture prescaler value
<i>TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1</i>	no prescaler
<i>TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV2</i>	divided by 2
<i>TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV4</i>	divided by 4
<i>TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV8</i>	divided by 8
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 input capture prescaler value */
timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV2);
```

## timer\_channel\_capture\_value\_register\_read

The description of timer\_channel\_capture\_value\_register\_read is shown as below:

**Table 3-530. Function timer\_channel\_capture\_value\_register\_read**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_channel_capture_value_register_read
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint32_t timer_channel_capture_value_register_read(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	read TIMER channel capture compare register value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint32_t</b>	channel capture compare register value (0x0000~0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read TIMER0 channel 0 capture compare register value */
```

```
uint32_t ch0_value = 0;
```

```
ch0_value = timer_channel_capture_value_register_read (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0);
```

## timer\_input\_pwm\_capture\_config

The description of timer\_input\_pwm\_capture\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-531. Function timer\_input\_pwm\_capture\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_input_pwm_capture_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_input_pwm_capture_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, timer_ic_parameter_struct* icpwm);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER input pwm capture function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>channel</b>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>icpwm</b>	TIMER channel input pwm parameter struct, the structure members can refer to <a href="#">Table 3-481. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct.</a>

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 input pwm capture parameter */

timer_ic_parameter_struct timer_icinitpara;

timer_icinitpara.icpolarity = TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING;

timer_icinitpara.icselection = TIMER_IC_SELECTION_DIRECTTTI;

timer_icinitpara.icprescaler = TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1;

timer_icinitpara.icfilter = 0x0;

timer_input_pwm_capture_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, &timer_icinitpara);

```

## timer\_hall\_mode\_config

The description of timer\_hall\_mode\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-532. Function timer\_hall\_mode\_config**

Function name	timer_hall_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_hall_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t hallmode);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER hall sensor mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..4,7)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
hallmode	TIMER hall sensor mode state
TIMER_HALLINTERFA CE_ENABLE	TIMER hall sensor mode enable
TIMER_HALLINTERFA CE_DISABLE	TIMER hall sensor mode disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 hall sensor mode */

```

timer\_hall\_mode\_config (TIMER0, TIMER\_HALLINTERFACE\_ENABLE);

## timer\_input\_trigger\_source\_select

The description of timer\_input\_trigger\_source\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-533. Function timer\_input\_trigger\_source\_select**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_input_trigger_source_select
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_input_trigger_source_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t intrigger);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	select TIMER input trigger source
<b>Precondition</b>	SMC[2:0] = 000
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>intrigger</b>	trigger selection
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_ITI0</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI0, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11) )
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_ITI1</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI1, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11) )
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_ITI2</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI2, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11) )
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_ITI3</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI3, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11) )
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_CIOF_ED</i>	CIO edge flag (CIOF_ED, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11) )
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_CIOFE0</i>	channel 0 input Filtered output (CIOFE0, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11) )
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_C1FE1</i>	channel 1 input Filtered output (C1FE1, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11) )
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_ETIFP</i>	External trigger input filter output(ETIFP, TIMERx(x=0..4,7) )
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select TIMER0 input trigger source */
```

```
timer_input_trigger_source_select (TIMER0, TIMER_SMCFG_TRGSEL_ITI0);
```

## timer\_master\_output\_trigger\_source\_select

The description of timer\_master\_output\_trigger\_source\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-534. Function timer\_master\_output\_trigger\_source\_select**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_master_output_trigger_source_select
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_master_output_trigger_source_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t outrigger);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	select TIMER master mode output trigger source
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>outrigger</b>	master mode control
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_RESET</i>	Reset. When the UPG bit in the <i>TIMERx_SWEVG</i> register is set or a reset is generated by the slave mode controller, a TRGO pulse occurs. And in the latter case, the signal on TRGO is delayed compared to the actual reset
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_ENABLE</i>	Enable. This mode is useful to start several timers at the same time or to control a window in which a slave timer is enabled. In this mode the master mode controller selects the counter enable signal as TRGO. The counter enable signal is set when CEN control bit is set or the trigger input in pause mode is high. There is a delay between the trigger input in pause mode and the TRGO output, except if the master-slave mode is selected.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_UPDATE</i>	Update. In this mode the master mode controller selects the update event as TRGO.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_CC0</i>	Capture/compare pulse. In this mode the master mode controller generates a TRGO pulse when a capture or a compare match occurred in channel 0.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O0CPRE</i>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O0CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O1CPRE</i>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O1CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O2CPRE</i>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O2CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O3CPRE</i>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O3CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select TIMER0 master mode output trigger source */
```

```
timer_master_output_trigger_source_select (TIMER0, TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_RESET);
```

## timer\_slave\_mode\_select

The description of timer\_slave\_mode\_select is shown as below:

**Table 3-535. Function timer\_slave\_mode\_select**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_slave_mode_select
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_slave_mode_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t slavemode);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	select TIMER slave mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>slavemode</b>	slave mode
TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_DISABLE	slave mode disable
TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE0	quadrature decoder mode 0
TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE1	quadrature decoder mode 1
TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE2	quadrature decoder mode 2
TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_RESTART	restart mode
TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_PAUSE	pause mode
TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_EVENT	event mode
TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_EXTERNAL0	external clock mode 0
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select TIMER0 slave mode */
```

```
timer_slave_mode_select (TIMER0, TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE0);
```

## timer\_master\_slave\_mode\_config

The description of timer\_master\_slave\_mode\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-536. Function timer\_master\_slave\_mode\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_master_slave_mode_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_master_slave_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t masterslave);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER master slave mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>masterslave</b>	master slave mode state
<i>TIMER_MASTER_SLAVE_MODE_ENABLE</i>	master slave mode enable
<i>TIMER_MASTER_SLAVE_MODE_DISABLE</i>	master slave mode disable
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 master slave mode */
```

```
timer_master_slave_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_MASTER_SLAVE_MODE_ENABLE);
```

## timer\_external\_trigger\_config

The description of timer\_external\_trigger\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-537. Function timer\_external\_trigger\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_external_trigger_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_external_trigger_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extprescaler, uint32_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER external trigger input
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	



<b>extprescaler</b>	external trigger prescaler
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_OFF</i>	no divided
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2</i>	divided by 2
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV4</i>	divided by 4
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV8</i>	divided by 8
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>expolarity</b>	external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_ETP_FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active
<i>TIMER_ETP_RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>extfilter</b>	external trigger filter control (0~15)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 external trigger input */
```

```
timer_external_trigger_config (TIMER0, TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2,  
TIMER_ETP_FALLING, 10);
```

### timer\_quadrature\_decoder\_mode\_config

The description of timer\_quadrature\_decoder\_mode\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-538. Function timer\_quadrature\_decoder\_mode\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t decomode, uint16_t ic0polarity, uint16_t ic1polarity);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER quadrature decoder mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>decomode</b>	quadrature decoder mode
<i>TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE0</i>	counter counts on CI0FE0 edge depending on CI1FE1 level

<i>TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE1</i>	counter counts on CI1FE1 edge depending on CI0FE0 level
<i>TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE2</i>	counter counts on both CI0FE0 and CI1FE1 edges depending on the level of the other input
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ic0polarity</b>	IC0 polarity
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING</i>	capture rising edge
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING</i>	capture falling edge
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ic1polarity</b>	IC1 polarity
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING</i>	capture rising edge
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING</i>	capture falling edge
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 quadrature decoder mode */
```

```
timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE0,
TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING);
```

## timer\_internal\_clock\_config

The description of timer\_internal\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-539. Function timer\_internal\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_internal_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_internal_clock_config(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER internal clock mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 internal clock mode */
```

```
timer_internal_clock_config (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_internal\_trigger\_as\_external\_clock\_config

The description of timer\_internal\_trigger\_as\_external\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-540. Function timer\_internal\_trigger\_as\_external\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t intrigger);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER the internal trigger as external clock input
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	timer_input_trigger_source_select
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>intrigger</b>	trigger selection
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_ITI0</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI0)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_ITI1</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI1)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_ITI2</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI2)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_ITI3</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI3)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the internal trigger ITI0 as external clock input */
```

```
timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config (TIMER0, TIMER_SMCFG_TRGSEL_ITI0);
```

## timer\_external\_trigger\_as\_external\_clock\_config

The description of timer\_external\_trigger\_as\_external\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-541. Function timer\_external\_trigger\_as\_external\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config
----------------------	-------------------------------------------------

<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extrigger, uint16_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER the external trigger as external clock input
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	timer_input_trigger_source_select
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>extrigger</b>	external trigger selection
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_CIOF_ED</i>	CI0 edge flag (CIOF_ED)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_CIOFE0</i>	channel 0 input Filtered output (CIOFE0)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_C1FE1</i>	channel 1 input Filtered output (C1FE1)
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>expolarity</b>	external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_ RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_ FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>extfilter</b>	external trigger filter control (0~15)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the external trigger CIOFE0 as external clock input */
```

```
timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config (TIMER0,  
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGSEL_CIOFE0, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING, 0);
```

### timer\_external\_clock\_mode0\_config

The description of timer\_external\_clock\_mode0\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-542. Function timer\_external\_clock\_mode0\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_external_clock_mode0_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_external_clock_mode0_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extprescaler, uint32_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER the external clock mode0

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	timer_external_trigger_config
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>extprescaler</b>	ETI external trigger prescaler
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_OFF</i>	no divided
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2</i>	divided by 2
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV4</i>	divided by 4
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV8</i>	divided by 8
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>expolarity</b>	ETI external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_ETP_FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active
<i>TIMER_ETP_RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>extfilter</b>	ETI external trigger filter control (0~15)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the external clock mode0 */
```

```
timer_external_clock_mode0_config (TIMER0, TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2,  
TIMER_ETP_FALLING, 0);
```

### timer\_external\_clock\_mode1\_config

The description of timer\_external\_clock\_mode1\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-543. Function timer\_external\_clock\_mode1\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_external_clock_mode1_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_external_clock_mode1_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extprescaler, uint32_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER the external clock mode1
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	timer_external_trigger_config
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>extprescaler</b>	ETI external trigger prescaler
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_OFF</i>	no divided
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2</i>	divided by 2
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV4</i>	divided by 4
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV8</i>	divided by 8
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>expolarity</b>	ETI external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_ETP_FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active
<i>TIMER_ETP_RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>extfilter</b>	ETI external trigger filter control (0~15)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the external clock mode1 */
```

```
timer_external_clock_mode1_config (TIMER0, TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2,  
TIMER_ETP_FALLING, 0);
```

## timer\_external\_clock\_mode1\_disable

The description of timer\_external\_clock\_mode1\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-544. Function timer\_external\_clock\_mode1\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_external_clock_mode1_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_external_clock_mode1_disable(uint32_t timer_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable TIMER the external clock mode1
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 the external clock mode1 */
```

```
timer_external_clock_mode1_disable (TIMER0);
```

## timer\_write\_chxval\_register\_config

The description of timer\_write\_chxval\_register\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-545. Function timer\_write\_chxval\_register\_config**

Function name	timer_write_chxval_register_config
Function prototype	void timer_write_chxval_register_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t ccsel);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER write CHxVAL register selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<b>ccsel</b>	write CHxVAL register selection
<i>TIMER_CHVSEL_DISABLE</i>	no effect
<i>TIMER_CHVSEL_ENABLE</i>	when write the CHxVAL register, if the write value is same as the CHxVAL value, the write access is ignored
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 write CHxVAL register selection */
```

```
timer_write_chxval_register_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CHVSEL_ENABLE);
```

## timer\_output\_value\_selection\_config

The description of timer\_output\_value\_selection\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-546. Function timer\_output\_value\_selection\_config**

Function name	timer_output_value_selection_config
Function prototype	void timer_output_value_selection_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t outsel);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure TIMER output value selection
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx (x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>outsel</b>	output value selection
<i>TIMER_OUTSEL_DISABLE</i>	no effect
<i>TIMER_OUTSEL_ENABLE</i>	if POEN and IOS is 0, the output disabled
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER output value selection */
```

```
timer_output_value_selection_config(TIMER0, TIMER_OUTSEL_ENABLE);
```

### timer\_interrupt\_enable

The description of timer\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-547. Function timer\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_interrupt_enable(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable the TIMER interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	timer interrupt enable source
<i>TIMER_INT_UP</i>	update interrupt enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH0</i>	channel 0 interrupt enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH1</i>	channel 1 interrupt enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH2</i>	channel 2 interrupt enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH3</i>	channel 3 interrupt enable , <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_CMT</i>	commutation interrupt enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_TRG</i>	trigger interrupt enable, <i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7,8,11)



<i>TIMER_INT_BRK</i>	break interrupt enable, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the TIMER0 update interrupt */
```

```
timer_interrupt_enable (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_UP);
```

## timer\_interrupt\_disable

The description of `timer_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-548. Function `timer_interrupt_disable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>timer_interrupt_disable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void timer_interrupt_disable (uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable the TIMER interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	timer interrupt disable source
<i>TIMER_INT_UP</i>	update interrupt disable, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH0</i>	channel 0 interrupt disable, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH1</i>	channel 1 interrupt disable, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH2</i>	channel 2 interrupt disable, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH3</i>	channel 3 interrupt disable, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_CMT</i>	commutation interrupt disable, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_TRG</i>	trigger interrupt disable, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_BRK</i>	break interrupt disable, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the TIMER0 update interrupt */
```

```
timer_interrupt_disable (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_UP);
```

## timer\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of timer\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-549. Function timer\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus timer_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get timer interrupt flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	the timer interrupt bits
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP</i>	update interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH0</i>	channel 0 interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH1</i>	channel 1 interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH2</i>	channel 2 interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH3</i>	channel 3 interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CMT</i>	channel commutation interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_TRG</i>	trigger interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_BRK</i>	break interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get TIMER0 update interrupt flag */
```

```
FlagStatus Flag_interrupt = RESET;
```

```
Flag_interrupt = timer_interrupt_flag_get (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP);
```

## timer\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of timer\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-550. Function timer\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear TIMER interrupt flag

<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	the timer interrupt bits
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP</i>	update interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH0</i>	channel 0 interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH1</i>	channel 1 interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH2</i>	channel 2 interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH3</i>	channel 3 interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CMT</i>	channel commutation interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_TRG</i>	trigger interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_BRK</i>	break interrupt flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear TIMER0 update interrupt flag */
```

```
timer_interrupt_flag_clear (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP);
```

## timer\_flag\_get

The description of timer\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-551. Function timer\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus timer_flag_get(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get TIMER flags
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	the timer interrupt flags
<i>TIMER_FLAG_UP</i>	update flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..13)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH0</i>	channel 0 flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH1</i>	channel 1 flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)

<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH2</i>	channel 2 flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH3</i>	channel 3 flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CMT</i>	channel commutation flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_TRG</i>	trigger flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_BRK</i>	break flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH0O</i>	channel 0 overcapture flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7..11)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH1O</i>	channel 1 overcapture flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH2O</i>	channel 2 overcapture flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH3O</i>	channel 3 overcapture flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get TIMERO update flags */
```

```
FlagStatus Flag_status = RESET;
```

```
Flag_status = timer_flag_get (TIMERO, TIMER_FLAG_UP);
```

## timer\_flag\_clear

The description of timer\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-552. Function timer\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	timer_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void timer_flag_clear(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear TIMER flags
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>timer_periph</b>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	the timer interrupt flags
<i>TIMER_FLAG_UP</i>	update flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..13)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH0</i>	channel 0 flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH1</i>	channel 1 flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH2</i>	channel 2 flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH3</i>	channel 3 flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CMT</i>	channel commutation flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_TRG</i>	trigger flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_BRK</i>	break flag, <i>TIMERx</i> ( <i>x</i> =0,7)

<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH0O</i>	channel 0 overcapture flag, $TIMERx(x=0..4,7..11)$
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH1O</i>	channel 1 overcapture flag, $TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)$
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH2O</i>	channel 2 overcapture flag, $TIMERx(x=0..4,7)$
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH3O</i>	channel 3 overcapture flag, $TIMERx(x=0..4,7)$
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear TIMER0 update flags */
timer_flag_clear (TIMER0, TIMER_FLAG_UP);
```

## 3.22. USART

The Universal Synchronous/Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (USART) provides a flexible serial data exchange interface. The USART registers are listed in chapter [3.22.1](#), the USART firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.22.2](#).

### 3.22.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

USART registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-553. USART Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
USART_STAT0	Status register 0
USART_DATA	Data register
USART_BAUD	Baud rate register
USART_CTL0	Control register 0
USART_CTL1	Control register 1
USART_CTL2	Control register 2
USART_GP	Guard time and prescaler register
USART_CTL3	Control register 3
USART_RT	Receiver timeout register
USART_STAT1	Status register 1
USART_CHC	Coherence control register

### 3.22.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

USART firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-554. USART firmware function**

Function name	Function description
usart_deinit	reset USART/UART
usart_baudrate_set	configure USART baud rate value
usart_parity_config	configure USART parity
usart_word_length_set	configure USART word length
usart_stop_bit_set	configure USART stop bit length
usart_enable	enable USART
usart_disable	disable USART
usart_transmit_config	configure USART transmitter
usart_receive_config	configure USART receiver
usart_data_first_config	data is transmitted/received with the LSB/MSB first
usart_invert_config	configure USART inverted
usart_receiver_timeout_enable	enable receiver timeout
usart_receiver_timeout_disable	disable receiver timeout
usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config	configure receiver timeout threshold
usart_data_transmit	USART transmit data function
usart_data_receive	USART receive data function
usart_address_config	configure the address of the USART in wake up by address match mode
usart_mute_mode_enable	enable mute mode
usart_mute_mode_disable	disable mute mode
usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config	configure wakeup method in mute mode
usart_lin_mode_enable	enable LIN mode
usart_lin_mode_disable	disable LIN mode
usart_lin_break_dection_length_config	configure LIN break frame length
usart_send_break	send break frame
usart_halfduplex_enable	enable half duplex mode
usart_halfduplex_disable	disable half duplex mode
usart_synchronous_clock_enable	enable CK pin in synchronous mode
usart_synchronous_clock_disable	disable CK pin in synchronous mode
usart_synchronous_clock_config	configure USART synchronous mode parameters
usart_guard_time_config	configure guard time value in smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_mode_enable	enable smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_mode_disable	disable smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable	enable NACK in smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable	disable NACK in smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_autoretry_config	configure smartcard auto-retry number
usart_block_length_config	configure block length
usart_irda_mode_enable	enable IrDA mode

Function name	Function description
usart_irda_mode_disable	disable IrDA mode
usart_prescaler_config	configure the peripheral clock prescaler in USART IrDA low-power mode
usart_irda_lowpower_config	configure IrDA low-power
usart_hardware_flow_rts_config	configure hardware flow control RTS
usart_hardware_flow_cts_config	configure hardware flow control CTS
usart_dma_receive_config	configure USART DMA reception
usart_dma_transmit_config	configure USART DMA transmission
usart_hardware_flow_coherence_config	configure hardware flow control coherence mode
usart_flag_get	get flag in STAT0/STAT1 register
usart_flag_clear	clear flag in STAT0/STAT1 register
usart_interrupt_enable	enable USART interrupt
usart_interrupt_disable	disable USART interrupt
usart_interrupt_flag_get	get USART interrupt flag status
usart_interrupt_flag_clear	clear USART interrupt flag

## Enum usart\_flag\_enum

Table 3-555. usart\_flag\_enum

Member name	Function description
USART_FLAG_CTS	CTS change flag
USART_FLAG_LBD	LIN break detected flag
USART_FLAG_TBE	transmit data buffer empty
USART_FLAG_TC	transmission complete
USART_FLAG_RBNE	read data buffer not empty
USART_FLAG_IDLE	IDLE line detected flag
USART_FLAG_ORERR	overrun error flag
USART_FLAG_NERR	noise error flag
USART_FLAG_FERR	frame error flag
USART_FLAG_PERR	parity error flag
USART_FLAG_BSY	busy flag
USART_FLAG_EB	end of block flag
USART_FLAG_RT	receiver timeout flag
USART_FLAG_EPERR	early parity error flag

## Enum usart\_interrupt\_flag\_enum

Table 3-556. usart\_interrupt\_flag\_enum

Member name	Function description
USART_INT_FLAG_PERR	parity error interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_TBE	transmitter buffer empty interrupt flag

Member name	Function description
USART_INT_FLAG_TC	transmission complete interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE	read data buffer not empty interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE_ORE RR	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error flag
USART_INT_FLAG_IDLE	IDLE line detected interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_LBD	LIN break detected interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_CTS	CTS interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_ORER R	overrun error interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_NERR	noise error interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_FERR	frame error interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_EB	end of block interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RT	receive timeout interrupt flag

## Enum usart\_interrupt\_enum

Table 3-557. usart\_interrupt\_enum

Member name	Function description
USART_INT_PERR	parity error interrupt
USART_INT_TBE	transmitter buffer empty interrupt
USART_INT_TC	transmission complete interrupt
USART_INT_RBNE	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error interrupt
USART_INT_IDLE	IDLE line detected interrupt
USART_INT_LBD	LIN break detected interrupt
USART_INT_CTS	CTS interrupt
USART_INT_ERR	error interrupt
USART_INT_EB	end of block interrupt
USART_INT_RT	receive timeout interrupt

## Enum usart\_invert\_enum

Table 3-558. usart\_invert\_enum

Member name	Function description
USART_DINV_ENABLE	data bit level inversion
USART_DINV_DISABLE	data bit level not inversion
USART_TXPIN_ENABLE	TX pin level inversion
USART_TXPIN_DISABLE	TX pin level not inversion
USART_RXPIN_ENABLE	RX pin level inversion
USART_RXPIN_DISABLE	RX pin level not inversion

## usart\_deinit

The description of usart\_deinit is shown as below:



**Table 3-559. Function `usart_deinit`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>usart_deinit</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void usart_deinit(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	reset USART/UART
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	<code>rcu_periph_reset_enable</code> / <code>rcu_periph_reset_disable</code>
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b><code>usart_periph</code></b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset USART0 */
usart_deinit (USART0);
```

## **`usart_baudrate_set`**

The description of `usart_baudrate_set` is shown as below:

**Table 3-560. Function `usart_baudrate_set`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>usart_baudrate_set</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void usart_baudrate_set(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t baudval);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART baud rate value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	<code>rcu_periph_reset_enable</code> / <code>rcu_periph_reset_disable</code>
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b><code>usart_periph</code></b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b><code>baudval</code></b>	baud rate value
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 baud rate value */
usart_baudrate_set(USART0, 115200);
```

## usart\_parity\_config

The description of usart\_parity\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-561. Function usart\_parity\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_parity_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_parity_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t paritycfg);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART parity
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>paritycfg</b>	configure USART parity
USART_PM_NONE	no parity
USART_PM_ODD	odd parity
USART_PM_EVEN	even parity
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART parity */
```

```
usart_parity_config(USART0, USART_PM_EVEN);
```

## usart\_word\_length\_set

The description of usart\_word\_length\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-562. Function usart\_word\_length\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_word_length_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_word_length_set(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t wlen);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART word length
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>wlen</b>	USART word length

<i>USART_WL_8BIT</i>	8 bits
<i>USART_WL_9BIT</i>	9 bits
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 word length */
usart_word_length_set(USART0, USART_WL_9BIT);
```

## usart\_stop\_bit\_set

The description of usart\_stop\_bit\_set is shown as below:

**Table 3-563. Function usart\_stop\_bit\_set**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_stop_bit_set
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_stop_bit_set(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t stblen);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART stop bit length
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>stblen</b>	USART stop bit
<i>USART_STB_1BIT</i>	1 bit
<i>USART_STB_0_5BIT</i>	0.5 bit, not available for UARTx(x=3,4)
<i>USART_STB_2BIT</i>	2 bits
<i>USART_STB_1_5BIT</i>	1.5 bits, not available for UARTx(x=3,4)
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 stop bit length */
usart_stop_bit_set(USART0, USART_STB_1_5BIT);
```

## usart\_enable

The description of usart\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-564. Function `usart_enable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>usart_enable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void usart_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable USART
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b><code>usart_periph</code></b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 */
usart_enable(USART0);
```

## **`usart_disable`**

The description of `usart_disable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-565. Function `usart_disable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>usart_disable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void usart_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable USART
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b><code>usart_periph</code></b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 */
usart_disable(USART0);
```

## usart\_transmit\_config

The description of usart\_transmit\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-566. Function usart\_transmit\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_transmit_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_transmit_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t txconfig);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART transmitter
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>txconfig</b>	enable or disable USART transmitter
USART_TRANSMIT_ENABLE	enable USART transmission
USART_TRANSMIT_DISABLE	enable USART transmission
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 transmitter */
```

```
usart_transmit_config(USART0,USART_TRANSMIT_ENABLE);
```

## usart\_receive\_config

The description of usart\_receive\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-567. Function usart\_receive\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_receive_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_receive_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t rxconfig);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART receiver
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>rxconfig</b>	enable or disable USART receiver
<i>USART_RECEIVE_ENABLE</i>	enable USART reception
<i>USART_RECEIVE_DISABLE</i>	disable USART reception
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 receiver */
```

```
usart_receive_config(USART0, USART_RECEIVE_ENABLE);
```

## usart\_data\_first\_config

The description of usart\_data\_first\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-568. Function usart\_data\_first\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_data_first_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_data_first_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t msbf);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	data is transmitted/received with the LSB/MSB first
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>msbf</b>	LSB first or MSB first
<i>USART_MSBF_LSB</i>	LSB first
<i>USART_MSBF_MSB</i>	MSB first
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure LSB of data first */
```

```
usart_data_first_config(USART0, USART_MSBF_LSB);
```

## usart\_invert\_config

The description of usart\_invert\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-569. Function `usart_invert_config`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>usart_invert_config</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void usart_invert_config(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_invert_enum invertpara);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART inversion
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<i>invertpara</i>	refer to Table 3-558. <code>usart_invert_enum</code>
<i>USART_DINV_ENAB</i> <i>E</i>	data bit level inversion
<i>USART_DINV_DISAB</i> <i>E</i>	data bit level not inversion
<i>USART_TXPIN_ENAB</i> <i>LE</i>	TX pin level inversion
<i>USART_TXPIN_DISAB</i> <i>LE</i>	TX pin level not inversion
<i>USART_RXPIN_ENAB</i> <i>LE</i>	RX pin level inversion
<i>USART_RXPIN_DISAB</i> <i>LE</i>	RX pin level not inversion
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART inversion */
```

```
usart_invert_config(USART0, USART_DINV_ENABLE);
```

## **`usart_receiver_timeout_enable`**

The description of `usart_receiver_timeout_enable` is shown as below:

**Table 3-570. Function `usart_receiver_timeout_enable`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>usart_receiver_timeout_enable</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void usart_receiver_timeout_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable receiver timeout
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-

Input parameter{in}	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable receiver timeout of USART */
usart_receiver_timeout_enable(USART0);
```

## usart\_receiver\_timeout\_disable

The description of usart\_receiver\_timeout\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-571. Function usart\_receiver\_timeout\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_receiver_timeout_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_receiver_timeout_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable receiver timeout
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable receiver timeout of USART */
usart_receiver_timeout_disable(USART0);
```

## usart\_receiver\_timeout\_threshold\_config

The description of usart\_receiver\_timeout\_threshold\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-572. Function usart\_receiver\_timeout\_threshold\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t rtimeout);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure receiver timeout threshold
<b>Precondition</b>	-



<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>rtimeout</b>	timeout value
<i>0-0xFFFFFFFF</i>	timeout value
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the receiver timeout threshold of USART0 */
```

```
usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config(USART0, 115200*3);
```

## usart\_data\_transmit

The description of usart\_data\_transmit is shown as below:

**Table 3-573. Function usart\_data\_transmit**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_data_transmit
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_data_transmit(uint32_t usart_periph, uint16_t data);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	USART transmit data function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>data</b>	data of transmission
<i>0-0xFF</i>	data of transmission
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 transmit data */
```

```
usart_data_transmit(USART0, 0xAA);
```

## usart\_data\_receive

The description of usart\_data\_receive is shown as below:

**Table 3-574. Function usart\_data\_receive**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_data_receive
<b>Function prototype</b>	uint16_t usart_data_receive(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	USART receive data function
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>uint16_t</b>	data of received(0-0xFF)

Example:

```
/* USART0 receive data */
```

```
uint16_t temp;
```

```
temp = usart_data_receive(USART0);
```

## usart\_address\_config

The description of usart\_address\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-575. Function usart\_address\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_address_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_address_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t addr);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the address of the USART in wake up by address match mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>addr</b>	address of USART/UART
<i>0-0xFF</i>	address of USART/UART
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure address of the USART0 */
```

```
usart_address_config(USART0, 0x00);
```

## usart\_mute\_mode\_enable

The description of usart\_mute\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-576. Function usart\_mute\_mode\_enable**

Function name	usart_mute_mode_enable
Function prototype	void usart_mute_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable mute mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 receiver in mute mode */
```

```
usart_mute_mode_enable(USART0);
```

## usart\_mute\_mode\_disable

The description of usart\_mute\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-577. Function usart\_mute\_mode\_disable**

Function name	usart_mute_mode_disable
Function prototype	void usart_mute_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable mute mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 receiver in mute mode */
```

```
usart_mute_mode_disable(USART0);
```

## usart\_mute\_mode\_wakeup\_config

The description of usart\_mute\_mode\_wakeup\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-578. Function usart\_mute\_mode\_wakeup\_config**

Function name	usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config
Function prototype	void usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t wmethod);
Function descriptions	configure wakeup method in mute mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
wmethod	two methods be used to enter or exit the mute mode
USART_WM_IDLE	idle line
USART_WM_ADDR	address mask
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 wakeup method in mute mode */
```

```
usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config(USART0, USART_WM_IDLE);
```

## usart\_lin\_mode\_enable

The description of usart\_lin\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-579. Function usart\_lin\_mode\_enable**

Function name	usart_lin_mode_enable
Function prototype	void usart_lin_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);

<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable LIN mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 LIN mode enable */
```

```
usart_lin_mode_enable(USART0);
```

## usart\_lin\_mode\_disable

The description of usart\_lin\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-580. Function usart\_lin\_mode\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_lin_mode_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_lin_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable LIN mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 LIN mode disable */
```

```
usart_lin_mode_disable(USART0);
```

## usart\_lin\_break\_dection\_length\_config

The description of usart\_lin\_break\_dection\_length\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-581. Function `usart_lin_break_dection_length_config`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>usart_lin_break_dection_length_config</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void usart_lin_break_dection_length_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t lblen);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure LIN break frame length
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>lblen</b>	two methods be used to enter or exit the mute mode
<i>USART_LBLEN_10B</i>	break frame length is 10 bits
<i>USART_LBLEN_11B</i>	break frame length is 11 bits
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure LIN break frame length */
```

```
usart_lin_break_dection_length_config(USART0, USART_LBLEN_10B);
```

## **usart\_send\_break**

The description of `usart_send_break` is shown as below:

**Table 3-582. Function `usart_send_break`**

<b>Function name</b>	<code>usart_send_break</code>
<b>Function prototype</b>	<code>void usart_send_break(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
<b>Function descriptions</b>	send break frame
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 send break frame */
```

```
usart_send_break(USART0);
```

## usart\_halfduplex\_enable

The description of usart\_halfduplex\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-583. Function usart\_halfduplex\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_halfduplex_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_halfduplex_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable half duplex mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 half duplex mode*/
```

```
usart_halfduplex_enable(USART0);
```

## usart\_halfduplex\_disable

The description of usart\_halfduplex\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-584. Function usart\_halfduplex\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_halfduplex_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_halfduplex_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable half duplex mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 half duplex mode*/

usart_halfduplex_disable(USART0);
```

## usart\_synchronous\_clock\_enable

The description of usart\_synchronous\_clock\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-585. Function usart\_synchronous\_clock\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_synchronous_clock_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_synchronous_clock_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable CK pin in synchronous mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 CK pin in synchronous mode */

usart_synchronous_clock_enable(USART0);
```

## usart\_synchronous\_clock\_disable

The description of usart\_synchronous\_clock\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-586. Function usart\_synchronous\_clock\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_synchronous_clock_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_synchronous_clock_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable CK pin in synchronous mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-



Example:

```
/* disable USART0 CK pin in synchronous mode */
```

```
usart_synchronous_clock_disable(USART0);
```

## usart\_synchronous\_clock\_config

The description of usart\_synchronous\_clock\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-587. Function usart\_synchronous\_clock\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_synchronous_clock_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_synchronous_clock_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t clen, uint32_t cph, uint32_t cpl);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART synchronous mode parameters
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>clen</b>	CK length
<i>USART_CLEN_NONE</i>	there are 7 CK pulses for an 8 bit frame and 8 CK pulses for a 9 bit frame
<i>USART_CLEN_EN</i>	there are 8 CK pulses for an 8 bit frame and 9 CK pulses for a 9 bit frame
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>cph</b>	clock phase
<i>USART_CPH_1CK</i>	first clock transition is the first data capture edge
<i>USART_CPH_2CK</i>	second clock transition is the first data capture edge
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>cpl</b>	clock polarity
<i>USART_CPL_LOW</i>	steady low value on CK pin
<i>USART_CPL_HIGH</i>	steady high value on CK pin
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 synchronous mode parameters */
```

```
usart_synchronous_clock_config(USART0,USART_CLEN_EN,USART_CPH_2CK,  
USART_CPL_HIGH);
```

## usart\_guard\_time\_config

The description of usart\_guard\_time\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-588. Function usart\_guard\_time\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_guard_time_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_guard_time_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t gaut);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure guard time value in smartcard mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>gaut</b>	guard time value
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 guard time value in smartcard mode */
```

```
usart_guard_time_config(USART0, 0x55);
```

## usart\_smartcard\_mode\_enable

The description of usart\_smartcard\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-589. Function usart\_smartcard\_mode\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_smartcard_mode_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_smartcard_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable smartcard mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 smartcard mode enable */
```

```
usart_smartcard_mode_enable(USART0);
```

## usart\_smartcard\_mode\_disable

The description of usart\_smartcard\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-590. Function usart\_smartcard\_mode\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_smartcard_mode_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_smartcard_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable smartcard mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 smartcard mode disable */
usart_smartcard_mode_disable(USART0);
```

## usart\_smartcard\_mode\_nack\_enable

The description of usart\_smartcard\_mode\_nack\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-591. Function usart\_smartcard\_mode\_nack\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable NACK in smartcard mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 NACK in smartcard mode */
usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable(USART0);
```

## usart\_smartcard\_mode\_nack\_disable

The description of usart\_smartcard\_mode\_nack\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-592. Function usart\_smartcard\_mode\_nack\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable NACK in smartcard mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 NACK in smartcard mode */
usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable(USART0);
```

## usart\_smartcard\_autoretry\_config

The description of usart\_smartcard\_autoretry\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-593. Function usart\_smartcard\_autoretry\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_smartcard_autoretry_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_smartcard_autoretry_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t scrtnum);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure smartcard auto-retry number
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>scrtnum</b>	smartcard auto-retry number
<i>0-0xFF</i>	smartcard auto-retry number
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure smartcard auto-retry number */

usart_smartcard_autoretry_config (USART0, 0xFF);
```

## usart\_block\_length\_config

The description of usart\_block\_length\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-594. Function usart\_block\_length\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_block_length_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_block_length_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t bl);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure block length
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>bl</b>	block length
<i>0-0xFF</i>	block length
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure block length in Smartcard T=1 reception */

usart_block_length_config(USART0, 0xFF);
```

## usart\_irda\_mode\_enable

The description of usart\_irda\_mode\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-595. Function usart\_irda\_mode\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_irda_mode_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_irda_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable IrDA mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 IrDA mode */
```

```
usart_irda_mode_enable(USART0);
```

## usart\_irda\_mode\_disable

The description of usart\_irda\_mode\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-596. Function usart\_irda\_mode\_disable**

Function name	usart_irda_mode_disable
Function prototype	void usart_irda_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable IrDA mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 IrDA mode */
```

```
usart_irda_mode_disable(USART0);
```

## usart\_prescaler\_config

The description of usart\_prescaler\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-597. Function usart\_prescaler\_config**

Function name	usart_prescaler_config
Function prototype	void usart_prescaler_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t psc);
Function descriptions	configure the peripheral clock prescaler in USART IrDA low-power mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral

<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>psc</b>	0x00-0xFF
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the USART0 peripheral clock prescaler */
```

```
usart_prescaler_config(USART0, 0x00);
```

## usart\_irda\_lowpower\_config

The description of usart\_irda\_lowpower\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-598. Function usart\_irda\_lowpower\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_irda_lowpower_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_irda_lowpower_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t irlp);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure IrDA low-power
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>irlp</b>	IrDA low-power or normal
<i>USART_IRLP_LOW</i>	low-power
<i>USART_IRLP_NORMAL</i>	normal
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 IrDA low-power */
```

```
usart_irda_lowpower_config(USART0, USART_IRLP_LOW);
```

## usart\_hardware\_flow\_rts\_config

The description of usart\_hardware\_flow\_rts\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-599. Function usart\_hardware\_flow\_rts\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_hardware_flow_rts_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_hardware_flow_rts_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t rtsconfig);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure hardware flow control RTS
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>rtsconfig</b>	enable or disable RTS
<i>USART_RTS_ENABLE</i>	enable RTS
<i>USART_RTS_DISABLE</i>	disable RTS
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 hardware flow control RTS */
```

```
usart_hardware_flow_rts_config(USART0, USART_RTS_ENABLE);
```

## usart\_hardware\_flow\_cts\_config

The description of usart\_hardware\_flow\_cts\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-600. Function usart\_hardware\_flow\_cts\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_hardware_flow_cts_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_hardware_flow_cts_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t ctsconfig);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure hardware flow control RTS
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>ctsconfig</b>	enable or disable CTS



<i>USART_CTS_ENABLE</i>	enable CTS
<i>USART_CTS_DISABLE</i>	disable CTS
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 hardware flow control CTS */
```

```
usart_hardware_flow_cts_config(USART0, USART_CTS_ENABLE);
```

## usart\_dma\_receive\_config

The description of usart\_dma\_receive\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-601. Function usart\_dma\_receive\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_dma_receive_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_dma_receive_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t dmaconfig);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART DMA reception
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dmaconfig</b>	USART DMA mode
<i>USART_RECEIVE_DMA_ENABLE</i>	enable USART DMA for reception
<i>USART_RECEIVE_DMA_DISABLE</i>	disable USART DMA for reception
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 DMA enable for reception */
```

```
usart_dma_receive_config(USART0, USART_RECEIVE_DMA_ENABLE);
```

## usart\_dma\_transmit\_config

The description of usart\_dma\_transmit\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-602. Function usart\_dma\_transmit\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_dma_transmit_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_dma_transmit_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t dmaconfig);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure USART DMA transmission
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>dmaconfig</b>	USART DMA mode
USART_TRANSMIT_DMA_ENABLE	enable USART DMA for transmission
USART_TRANSMIT_DMA_DISABLE	disable USART DMA for transmission
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 DMA enable for transmission */
```

```
usart_dma_transmit_config(USART0, USART_TRANSMIT_DMA_ENABLE);
```

## usart\_hardware\_flow\_coherence\_config

The description of usart\_hardware\_flow\_coherence\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-603. Function usart\_hardware\_flow\_coherence\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_hardware_flow_coherence_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_hardware_flow_coherence_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t hcm);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure hardware flow control coherence mode
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3

Input parameter{in}	
<b>hcm</b>	Hardware flow control coherence mode
<i>USART_RTS_NONE_COHERENCE</i>	nRTS signal equals to RBNE bit in USART_STAT0 register
<i>USART_RTS_COHERENCE</i>	nRTS signal is set when the last data bit has been sampled
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure hardware flow control coherence mode */
usart_hardware_flow_coherence_config(USART0, USART_RTS_COHERENCE);
```

## usart\_flag\_get

The description of usart\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-604. Function usart\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus usart_flag_get(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_flag_enum flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get flag in STAT0/STAT1 register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
Input parameter{in}	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
<b>flag</b>	USART flags, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-555. usart_flag_enum</a>
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get flag USART0 state */
FlagStatus status;
status = usart_flag_get(USART0, USART_FLAG_TBE);
```

## usart\_flag\_clear

The description of usart\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-605. Function usart\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_flag_clear(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_flag_enum flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear flag in STAT0/STAT1 register
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>flag</b>	USART flags, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-555. usart_flag_enum</a>
USART_FLAG_CTSF	CTS change flag
USART_FLAG_LBDF	LIN break detected flag
USART_FLAG_TC	transmission complete
USART_FLAG_RBNE	read data buffer not empty
USART_FLAG_EB	end of block flag
USART_FLAG_RT	receiver timeout flag
USART_FLAG_EPERR	early parity error flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear USART0 flag */
usart_flag_clear(USART0,USART_FLAG_TC);
```

## usart\_interrupt\_enable

The description of usart\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-606. Function usart\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_interrupt_enable(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_enum interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable USART interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	

<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>interrupt</b>	USART interrupt, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-557. usart_interrupt_enum</a>
<i>USART_INT_PERR</i>	parity error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_TBE</i>	transmitter buffer empty interrupt
<i>USART_INT_TC</i>	transmission complete interrupt
<i>USART_INT_RBNE</i>	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_IDLE</i>	IDLE line detected interrupt
<i>USART_INT_LBD</i>	LIN break detected interrupt
<i>USART_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_CTS</i>	CTS interrupt
<i>USART_INT_RT</i>	receive timeout event interrupt
<i>USART_INT_EB</i>	end of block event interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 TBE interrupt */
```

```
usart_interrupt_enable(USART0, USART_INT_TBE);
```

### usart\_interrupt\_disable

The description of usart\_interrupt\_disable is shown as below:

**Table 3-607. Function usart\_interrupt\_disable**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_interrupt_disable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_interrupt_disable(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_enum interrupt);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	disable USART interrupt
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>int_flag</b>	USART interrupt flag, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-557. usart_interrupt_enum</a>
<i>USART_INT_PERR</i>	parity error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_TBE</i>	transmitter buffer empty interrupt

<i>USART_INT_TC</i>	transmission complete interrupt
<i>USART_INT_RBNE</i>	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_IDLE</i>	IDLE line detected interrupt
<i>USART_INT_LBD</i>	LIN break detected interrupt
<i>USART_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_CTS</i>	CTS interrupt
<i>USART_INT_RT</i>	receive timeout event interrupt
<i>USART_INT_EB</i>	end of block event interrupt
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 TBE interrupt */
```

```
usart_interrupt_disable(USART0, USART_INT_TBE);
```

## usart\_interrupt\_flag\_get

The description of usart\_interrupt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-608. Function usart\_interrupt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_interrupt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus usart_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	get USART interrupt flag status
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>int_flag</b>	USART interrupt flag, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-556. usart_interrupt_flag_enum</a>
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_PERRR</i>	parity error interrupt and flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_TBNE</i>	transmitter buffer empty interrupt and flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_TC</i>	transmission complete interrupt and flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE</i>	read data buffer not empty interrupt and flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE_ORERR</i>	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error flag

<i>USART_INT_FLAG_IDLE</i>	IDLE line detected interrupt and flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_LBD</i>	LIN break detected interrupt and flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_CTS</i>	CTS interrupt and flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_ORERR</i>	error interrupt and overrun error
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_NERR</i>	error interrupt and noise error flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_FERR</i>	error interrupt and frame error flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_EB</i>	end of block event interrupt flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_RT</i>	receive timeout event interrupt flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the USART0 interrupt flag status */
```

```
FlagStatus status;
```

```
status = usart_interrupt_flag_get(USART0, USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE);
```

## usart\_interrupt\_flag\_clear

The description of usart\_interrupt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-609. Function usart\_interrupt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	usart_interrupt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void usart_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear USART interrupt flag
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>usart_periph</b>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>int_flag</b>	USART interrupt flag, refer to <a href="#">Table 3-556. usart_interrupt_flag_enum</a>
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_CTS</i>	CTS change flag

<code>USART_INT_FLAG_LB</code> <code>D</code>	LIN break detected flag
<code>USART_INT_FLAG_TC</code>	transmission complete
<code>USART_INT_FLAG_RB</code> <code>NE</code>	read data buffer not empty
<code>USART_INT_FLAG_EB</code>	end of block event interrupt flag
<code>USART_INT_FLAG_RT</code>	receive timeout event interrupt flag
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the USART0 interrupt enable bit status */
```

```
usart_interrupt_flag_clear(USART0, USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE);
```

## 3.23. WWDGT

The window watchdog timer (WWDGT) is used to detect system failures due to software malfunctions. The WWDGT registers are listed in chapter [3.23.1](#), the WWDGT firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.23.2](#).

### 3.23.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

WWDGT registers are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-610. WWDGT Registers**

Registers	Descriptions
WWDGT_CTL	Control register
WWDGT_CFG	Configuration register
WWDGT_STAT	Status register

### 3.23.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

WWDGT firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

**Table 3-611. WWDGT firmware function**

Function name	Function description
<code>wwdgt_deinit</code>	reset the window watchdog timer configuration
<code>wwdgt_enable</code>	start the window watchdog timer counter
<code>wwdgt_counter_update</code>	configure the window watchdog timer counter value
<code>wwdgt_config</code>	configure counter value, window value, and prescaler divider value



Function name	Function description
wwdgt_interrupt_enable	enable early wakeup interrupt of WWDGT
wwdgt_flag_get	check early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT
wwdgt_flag_clear	clear early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT

## wwdgt\_deinit

The description of wwdgt\_deinit is shown as below:

**Table 3-612. Function wwdgt\_deinit**

Function name	wwdgt_deinit
Function prototype	void wwdgt_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset the window watchdog timer configuration
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset the window watchdog timer configuration */
wwdgt_deinit ( );
```

## wwdgt\_enable

The description of wwdgt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-613. Function wwdgt\_enable**

Function name	wwdgt_enable
Function prototype	void wwdgt_enable (void);
Function descriptions	start the window watchdog timer counter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* start the window watchdog timer counter */
```

```
wwdgt_enable ( );
```

## wwdgt\_counter\_update

The description of wwdgt\_counter\_update is shown as below:

**Table 3-614. Function wwdgt\_counter\_update**

<b>Function name</b>	wwdgt_counter_update
<b>Function prototype</b>	void wwdgt_counter_update(uint16_t counter_value);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure the window watchdog timer counter value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>counter_value</b>	0x00 - 0x7F
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* update WWDGT counter to 0x7F */
```

```
wwdgt_counter_update (127);
```

## wwdgt\_config

The description of wwdgt\_config is shown as below:

**Table 3-615. Function wwdgt\_config**

<b>Function name</b>	wwdgt_config
<b>Function prototype</b>	void wwdgt_config(uint16_t counter, uint16_t window, uint32_t prescaler);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	configure counter value, window value, and prescaler divider value
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>counter</b>	0x00 - 0x7F
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>window</b>	0x00 - 0x7F
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
<b>prescaler</b>	wwdgt prescaler value
<i>WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV1</i>	the time base of window watchdog counter = (PCLK1/4096)/1
<i>WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV2</i>	the time base of window watchdog counter = (PCLK1/4096)/2

<i>WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D</i> <i>IV4</i>	the time base of window watchdog counter = (PCLK1/4096)/4
<i>WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D</i> <i>IV8</i>	the time base of window watchdog counter = (PCLK1/4096)/8
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure WWDGT counter value to 0x7F, window value to 0x50, prescaler divider value to 8 */
```

```
wwdgt_config(127, 80, WWDGT_CFG_PSC_DIV8);
```

## wwdgt\_interrupt\_enable

The description of wwdgt\_interrupt\_enable is shown as below:

**Table 3-616. Function wwdgt\_interrupt\_enable**

<b>Function name</b>	wwdgt_interrupt_enable
<b>Function prototype</b>	void wwdgt_interrupt_enable(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	enable early wakeup interrupt of WWDGT
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable early wakeup interrupt of WWDGT */
```

```
wwdgt_interrupt_enable ( );
```

## wwdgt\_flag\_get

The description of wwdgt\_flag\_get is shown as below:

**Table 3-617. Function wwdgt\_flag\_get**

<b>Function name</b>	wwdgt_flag_get
<b>Function prototype</b>	FlagStatus wwdgt_flag_get(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	check early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT
<b>Precondition</b>	-

<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
<b>FlagStatus</b>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* test if the counter value update has reached the 0x40 */
```

```
FlagStatus status;
```

```
status = wwdgt_flag_get ( );
```

```
if(status == RESET)
```

```
{
```

```
...
```

```
}else
```

```
{
```

```
...
```

```
}
```

## wwdgt\_flag\_clear

The description of wwdgt\_flag\_clear is shown as below:

**Table 3-618. Function wwdgt\_flag\_clear**

<b>Function name</b>	wwdgt_flag_clear
<b>Function prototype</b>	void wwdgt_flag_clear(void);
<b>Function descriptions</b>	clear early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT
<b>Precondition</b>	-
<b>The called functions</b>	-
<b>Input parameter{in}</b>	
-	-
<b>Output parameter{out}</b>	
-	-
<b>Return value</b>	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT */
```

`wwdgt_flag_clear ( );`

## 4. Revision history

**Table 4-1. Revision history**

Revision No.	Description	Date
1.0	Initial Release	Aug.15, 2022
1.1	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete function void can_frequency_set() and void can_fd_frequency_set()</li> <li>Change Usart functions: usart_data_transmit usart_guard_time_config usart_smartcard_autoretry_config usart_block_length_config usart_dma_receive_config usart_dma_transmit_config</li> <li>Change Timer decoder name</li> </ol>	Dec.31, 2022
1.2	The entire DAC chapter has been modified	Dec.31, 2023

## Important Notice

This document is the property of GigaDevice Semiconductor Inc. and its subsidiaries (the "Company"). This document, including any product of the Company described in this document (the "Product"), is owned by the Company under the intellectual property laws and treaties of the People's Republic of China and other jurisdictions worldwide. The Company reserves all rights under such laws and treaties and does not grant any license under its patents, copyrights, trademarks, or other intellectual property rights. The names and brands of third party referred thereto (if any) are the property of their respective owner and referred to for identification purposes only.

The Company makes no warranty of any kind, express or implied, with regard to this document or any Product, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. The Company does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any Product described in this document. Any information provided in this document is provided only for reference purposes. It is the responsibility of the user of this document to properly design, program, and test the functionality and safety of any application made of this information and any resulting product. Except for customized products which has been expressly identified in the applicable agreement, the Products are designed, developed, and/or manufactured for ordinary business, industrial, personal, and/or household applications only. The Products are not designed, intended, or authorized for use as components in systems designed or intended for the operation of weapons, weapons systems, nuclear installations, atomic energy control instruments, combustion control instruments, airplane or spaceship instruments, transportation instruments, traffic signal instruments, life-support devices or systems, other medical devices or systems (including resuscitation equipment and surgical implants), pollution control or hazardous substances management, or other uses where the failure of the device or Product could cause personal injury, death, property or environmental damage ("Unintended Uses"). Customers shall take any and all actions to ensure using and selling the Products in accordance with the applicable laws and regulations. The Company is not liable, in whole or in part, and customers shall and hereby do release the Company as well as its suppliers and/or distributors from any claim, damage, or other liability arising from or related to all Unintended Uses of the Products. Customers shall indemnify and hold the Company as well as its suppliers and/or distributors harmless from and against all claims, costs, damages, and other liabilities, including claims for personal injury or death, arising from or related to any Unintended Uses of the Products.

Information in this document is provided solely in connection with the Products. The Company reserves the right to make changes, corrections, modifications or improvements to this document and Products and services described herein at any time, without notice.